THE FAMOUS HISTORY OF MONTELION, Knight of the ORACLE.

Son to the true Mirrour of Princes, The Most Renowned *PERSICLES*, King of *ASSYRIA*.

SHEWING

His strange Birth, unfortunate Love, Perillous Adventures in Arms; And how he came to the Knowledge of his PARENTS.

Interlaced with Variety of Pleasant and Delightful Discourse.

Licensed, According to Order.

LONDON,
Printed by *A. P.* for *W. Thackeray*, and *T. Passinger*, and sold at their Shops: in *Duck-lane*, neer *West-*, and at the three Bibles on *London-Bridge*.

To the READERS: HEALTH.

GENTLEMEN,

YOur well tryed Favours have so far set me on fire in my further proceedings, that I, that hither followed the endeavours of Pierce Plainness, *seem now for your pleasure to become even a Bow-fellow Prodigal, spending the sum of my store to the uttermost, as long as it lasteth.*

If you find any crackt Coyn in these my Liberal Expences, yet for Foord's *sake afford them Starling, and winking at small faults, excuse me to be mistaken, and so amongst Friends it may pass for current. I am not of the humour of the New Fangling Taylor, that for every new wrought Suit, frames a New Fashion; Nor of their presumptuous Nature, that of themselves being but* Vixius, *Face out their attempts with Heroical Lyons-looks: But I, always the same, rest ever forward to entreat, careful to request, and daily addicted devoutly to attend Humility. Against biting* Theon's *Tooth I remain always Patience Proof, and the rather, considering the singular Sentence of One of the Seven Sages,* Viz.

That even a Man of Understanding (if he be) praised, he is led thereby to a self-loved opinion of his own Laudable Parts: or as self-willed, presuming on high deserts, may seem an especial Argument of no small Folly: So likewise for being discommended, to remain even Amort with heavy thear and drooping mind, figuring his sad looks like the Anatomy of Death, is a plain proof of his scarcity of Counsel, want of Patience, (which Philosophers hold the Soveraignest Virtue that be-

longs to the qualified indument of Mortality) and (which is worse) Penury of Reason, affectus tempore suos. *I purpose not this, gentle Reader, as if Scarcely I regard your judicious Censure; but rather portray a* Bealudium, *how indifferently I can endure the divers taunting reports of the envious: As for your ever regarded Judgements, I account it the Sanctuary wherein my tryed Scone may find refuge, the chief* Gress *onely whereby feeble inventions ascendeth; the* Coloss *that supporteth my Endeavours: yea, I reckon it all my Being, all my Essence, and all my Good.*

As therefore with a favourable smile, not long since, you entertained Parismus *and* Parismenos, *my Elder Off-springs with so chearful an Aspect: now cast your looks on my* Montelion; *whose forwardness to win the same, you shall perceive nothing Inferiour to the promptness of the former: although by Birth and Course of Time the Younger. He cannot acquaint you with the Wonders of Chivalry, with Admirable Acts, and Doubty Deeds, supported always with a Fairy Suffrage, as was* Ulysses *in his ten years venture, by the aid of* Pallace. *Your well-wishing acceptance, and kind conceit of him, is all the Recompence I ask for my travel. As I wish no more, so I trust you will no less grant this, and make my endeavours prosperous; deny that, and leave me so unfortunate as hopeless for ever, of any good success, as you have been bountiful in giving the one, so my self will not be ungrateful for the other, that both in one, and in both, may not onely augment your loving pleasures, which I heartily wish, but also inrich my lasting content, which I hope you as courteously will.*

15 APR 63

Your VVell-willer,

EMANUEL FOORD.

The Famous History of MONTELION, Knight of the *ORACLE*.

CHAP. I.

How *Perficles* was created King of *Assyria*, and travelled into *Persia*, to the Marriage of his Sister *Piera*, to the Emperour's Son *Deloratus*; how he is now enamoured of *Constantia*, and returned into *Assyria*.

AN Ancient King named Pius, Ruled the Land of Assyria in great Peace, as well Fortunate by the love of his Subjects, and other outward blessings, as with two fair Children, a Son, and a Daughter, that after his Death should succeed in his Empire; and by reason Age was now so much grown upon him, he found himself wearied and unable to exercise the care that belonged to the Government of so Mighty a Nation; also he beholding in his Son more then ordinary Wisdom, and so forward a mind to Vertue, as that he might well compass a matter of such weight to his care, he determined to give himself to rest, (as well agreed with his age) and caused all the Peers of the Land to be assembled.

[illegible] Parliament the old King restored his mind, which [illegible]
[illegible] Parliament, [illegible] gave their [illegible]
[illegible] Crowned King, [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[

The Marriage being past, the Sumptuous Banquets ended, and the States set to behold the Tilt; The first that entred the List was a Persian Duke, named Osimus, gallantly mounted, and a man of goodly proportion: After him followed the rest of the Persian Knights, who were all Challengers against all strangers that came to make tryal of their Valor: Next came the adverse party, the foremost of which was Persicles, who appeared in richness according to the Dignity of his place, being King of so mighty a Country as Assyria: whose sight led the beholders to an admiration of his evident perfections: After him followed Nonius, Prince of Natolia, and after him a number of most gallant Knights so richly adorned, as would have perswaded a cowardly Miscreant to have become valiant; whose particular descriptions I omit.

As Persicles was chief of the adverse part, and Duke Osimus of the Persians, so they two began the encounter, breaking of their staves with exceeding great valour: but Osimus intending to win the chiefest honour, for that he was esteemed the best Knight in Persia, had provided Staves of tough wood, which would not start with an easie encounter, one of which he took and ran the fourth time at Persicles, who unprovided for such an unexpected assault, was overturned, and his Steed tumbling fell upon him, that with the fall, for a time, he remained without sense. The Emperor of Persia and the rest, being much afraid that he was slain, came running from the Scaffold to take him up, carrying him forth of the Lists to be unarmed, amongst the rest his Sister Piera used her utmost endeavour to recover him; with whom likewise was a gallant company of Ladies to assist her, but chiefly the Empresse of Persia, and her youngest Daughter Constantia, as more regarding him by reason he was Brother to Piera, and most of all lamented his mishap.

Persicles finding himself somewhat recovered, at the first opening of his eyes, fixed them on Constantia, which by reason he was not fully revived, stood still fixed upon the first object, as it were with affectionate earnestness, which caused an exceeding blush to rise in her cheeks.

But now seeing such a number about him, he was amazed and half ashamed of his fool, said, I beseech you leave me to my

ſelf, and ſee the reſt of the Turnament; for I have no harm; with that he ſtarted upon his Feet, and fetching a deep ſigh, departed, they were all much glad at his ſafety, and ſo leading him to be attended by two Knights, they departed to the Scaffolds and again took their places to behold the reſt of the Turnament.

Perſicles was exceedingly vexed that he had received ſuch a diſgrace, and in the preſence of ſuch an honourable Aſſembly; moſt of all, for that he underſtood Oſimus's intent, and preſently buckling on one of his Knights Armour, mounting himſelf, entred the Liſt again: by which time the Liſt was almoſt ended, and the Perſian Knight bare away the prize; but Perſicles then unknown, ſtood ready at the races end for the next Encounter, againſt whom the Perſian Knight ran, but ſo far to his diſgrace, that he tumbled with his heels upwards; with that every one began to wonder who it ſhould be, and the people gave an exceeding ſhout, then another Perſian met with him, whoſe Fortune was much like the former; for his Steed ſtumbling with the force of the encounter, they both fell down. A Knight of Perſia, who that day had won great honour by his valour ſeeing that, would needs be the next to meet him, thinking to revenge his Country-mens diſgrace; but at the firſt Race they could not perform it, for they paſſed by without any other ods, but breaking their Staves moſt gallantly, and running again, the Perſians fortune was ſo bad that he was overthrown. By this time the day was ended, and the Judges ready to depart, but Oſimus entreated that he might break one ſtaff with the Granger, which they granted. Perſicles well knew him, reſolutely determining to give or take the foyl, both of them met with ſuch terror, that the earth ſeemed to ſhake: and Oſimus notwithſtanding his great ſtrength, was by Perſicles overthrown to ſalve his honour and requite his diſcourteſie: with that the people gave ſuch ſhouts as made all the Palace to ring with the ſound, then Perſicles diſcovered himſelf, which made every one reſoyce and wonder at his valour.

Perſicles being unarmed, accompanied the Emperour of Perſia, the King of Natolia, and the reſt, having that day won ſuch honour, as made him more highly eſteemed; and coming to

ſalute

ſalute his Sister Piera, he ſuddenly eſpyed Conſtantia, thinking he had before ſeen that ſweet countenance, but he could not remember where, which caſt him into ſuch a deep ſtudy, that he almoſt forgot himſelf. After he had ſaluted the reſt, he came to Conſtantia, to whom he ſaid: Fair Lady, either I have beheld your beauty & that ſweet countenance in ſome other Country, or in ſome viſion, for my mind perſwadeth me that I ſhould perfectly know you; for I am ſure, this is not the firſt time I have ſeen you, which makes me thus bold to demand of whence you are, if it be not offenſive unto you. Sir (replied Conſtantia) it may be I am but an imperfect ſhadow of her you ſo perfectly remember, for until this day I never ſaw you, which maketh me ſuppoſe you do but take occaſion of courſe to commend me, that deſerve no ſuch matter, neither ſhall it offend me, nor I deny to ſhew my birth, being Daughter to the Emperor of Perſia, but for many years brought up in Arabia. Pardon my boldneſſe (ſaid Perſicles) for I would not offend you; neither do I think you a ſhadow, but a perfect ſubſtance, and not to reſemble any but your ſelf; for there can be no beauty that exceeds yours, which mine eyes before this time have beheld, or elſe Nature it ſelf hath imprinted in my heart an eſſential inſtinct of Devotion thereto, which perſwades me to this boldneſs, therefore I humbly deſire you not to miſconceive me, nor eſteem me of ſo rude a diſpoſition, as to ſpeak otherwiſe then my heart thinks, and to account of me as one that earneſtly deſires to be better acquainted with you, and will endeavour to make amends for my offence given, offering my ſelf, and all that is mine to be at your diſpoſition; which ſaid, he left off further ſpeech, for he ſaw others attend to hear what he ſaid.

At night Conſtantia being in her private Chamber, called to remembrance Perſicles ſpeeches, marvelling why he ſhould ſay he had before that ſeen her, which ſhe knew could not be, but remembring how earneſtly he beheld her that day, when he was ſcarce revived from his trance, ſhe thought that might breed ſuch a perſwaſion in him, which was ſo indeed; withal ſhe called to mind his comelineſs, Valour, Eſtate, and Courteſie, which ſhe had before noted; all which remembrances made her ſo much forget all other thoughts, that a great part of the night was o-

verpast: and after she had revived her senses, she felt such an alteration, that all the night she could not rest, delighting in nothing more than to remember him. The like did Perficles, for her beauty and other outward graces had so pierced his heart, that he was enthralled to her love, and so resolved to win it.

Early the next morning he got up, seeking all occasions to speak with her again, but was disappointed all the Forenoon, for she by reason of her little rest in the night kept her Chamber, and after Dinner accompanied the Queen her Mother and other Ladies, whereby he was that day disappointed: The next morning likewise he arose, studying how to come to her speech: for his affection was so great, as no thought contented him so well as her remembrance, but before he could bring to pass what he most desired, there arrived messengers from Assyria, certifieing him that his father was dead, and that their ancient enemy the King of Armenia had entred the Land, and destroyed many of his Subjects, desiring him in all hast to return, for in his absence the Assyrians seemed like men without courage.

Perficles hearing this unexpected news, was exceedingly astonished, both with desire to save his Country, and also to prosecute his love, the one perswading him to stay, the other hasten his departure: the one being as dear to him as his life, the other as dear as life, Country and all, for without obtaining of that, he thought he could not live, being so much perplexed that he could not resolve what to do: At last the special regard of his Country overcame his heart, and revid'd him with a manly courage to revenge, so that he commanded all things to be prepared for his sudden departure: and going to his Chamber, he got Pen and Ink, and writ as followeth.

To the most fair *Constantia.*

MOst beloved *Constantia*, though my Countries preservation occasioneth my sudden departure, yet my love to your perfection importuneth me to solicite your gentle ears with these rude lines: I cannot with any colourable Phrases shadow a perfect meaning, nor with painted Eloquence decipher my true love: but in the truest sort manifest my constant affection

to

to your vertues, which unleſs you grace with ſome favour, will be my endleſs torments; I have long deſired to make the ſame manifeſt unto you, but I was diſappointed, and my unexpected departure hath now ſhut me from thy preſence, whereby I ſhall live in continual care: Notwithſtanding I humbly beſeech you in my unwilling abſence, to eſteem me your faithful and true devoted Servant, and one that have vowed himſelf ever to be yours, whoſe welfare conſiſteth in your courteſie, the hope whereof ſhall preſerve my life until my return, which my conſtant love will cauſe me to haſten; deſiring you, though I be abſent, not to forget me, nor for my little deſerts to reject me, but let me be ſo much bound to your vertues, as to conceive well of me, ſo ſhall my joys be lengthened, my unhappy life preſerved, and my good will and conſtant Loyalty highly rewarded: So with ſorrow I take my leave.

Yours inſeparably, *Perſicles.*

Having writ this Letter, he found out his Sister Piera: to whom he ſaid: Dear Sister the ſorrows that cauſe my departure come ſo ſuddenly, as that I cannot ſtand long to confer with you, therefore that I build upon the aſſurance of your love, ſecreſie, and aſſiſtance, I will unfold to you the ſecrets of my heart, and that which none but your ſelf ſhall know. So it is, that Conſtantiaes beauty hath enamoured my eyes, and I remain ſo much enthralled thereto, that unleſs ſhe pitty me, I am but caſt away: I deſire your aſſiſtance therein, whereby you may preſerve my life: I have writ this Letter unto her, which I deſire you to deliver, and withal to uſe ſuch ſpeeches in my behalf, as ſhall ſeem beſt in your wiſdom, for I aſſure you unleſs at my return, which ſhall be ſhortly, I find her favourable, my ſorrows will ſhorten my dayes: then good Sister ſhew your love to me in this. Piera promiſed her utmoſt aſſiſtance, and ſo with many tears on each ſide they parted.

The news of his departure was ſoon ſpread through the whole Court, and came to Conſtantiaes hearing, who left her chamber, thinking to have a ſight of him, which ſome ſparks of love being kindled in her tender breaſt, provoked her unto. After all farewells

weeks were past, he espyed her in company with other Ladies, to whom he came, and among the rest of them all, only took his leave of her with a sweet kiss, breathing forth a bitter sigh at the parting, which every one noted, some taking the same in disdain, and others marvelling that he regarded her above them all, which made the blood rise in Constantia's Cheeks, and the water swell in her eyes.

CHAP. II.

How *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*, croſt the love between *Perſicles* and *Conſtantia*: Of a battle fought between *Perſicles* and the King of *Armenia*, and how diſguiſing himſelf he travelled into *Perſia*, and how he diſcovered himſelf to *Conſtantia*.

HIs departure caused a sadnesse throughout the Court, for indeed he was the beauty thereof, so excellent was his person, and so commendable his qualities. Piera betaking her self to her Chamber lamented his absence with private teares, until Deloratus found her out, and caused her with comfortable speeches to give over that grief. The King of Natolia likewise with most of his Nobles and Knights that came to solemnization of the Wedding, were departed, except Prince Helion Son to the King of Arabia, the occasion of whose stay, was to espouse Constantia in Marriage, assuring himself of her love, by reason of the familiarity that had been betwixt them in his Fathers Court, which indeed by her former kindnesse he might be in some assurance of, though not by any promise she had made him; which motion he made to the Emperor of Persia, who esteeming so honourable of him, regarding his birth, and most of all desiring to be allied to the Arabian King gave his consent; which was fully concluded and agreed upon, before it came to Constantias knowledge.

Prince Helion having this assurance, with a merry heart sought out Constantia, intending to reveal the same to her, and according to his wonted kind of familiarity began to greet her:

in

in whom he found such an alteration that he wondred thereat; saying, My dear Constantia, this unexpected unkindness in you, whom I esteem as my most chosen friend, maketh me admire, whereas I had thought to have enjoyed your love without interruption: Upon confidence of your courtesie, I have moved your Fathers consent to our Marriage, who hath yeilded thereto, then I beseech you, darken not both yours and my joys with these misty clouds of care, which will fill my heart with sorrow; but rather encrease your kindness both to mine and your comfort.

Constantiaes countenance bewrayed the angry motions of her heart, caused by his speeches, that she had much ado to refrain from shedding tears, yet with a colour as red as scarlet, she gave him this answer: Prince Helion, if that be true which you tell me, I cannot chuse but wonder at your folly, that would without assurance of my love make such a motion; think you my affections are to be limited according to your disposition? for my part I disclaim such interrest, and renounce such affections? For I never intend any such matter, nor ever did you demand the same; then my Lord be you satisfied with this, for I never did nor will give my consent.

Helion hearing this answer, was nipt on the head, being struck with such grief, that he could not tell what to say, but at last replyed: Constantia, I confess I have done you wrong in adventuring so far without your consent, but yet for that I have not thereby dishonour'd your name, or otherwise injured you, I humbly crave pardon, desiring you to ratifie that which I have by your former courtesie assured my self of, and let not my overboldness alienate any part of your good will, for you know that my affections have remained inviolably constant many years, & I have attended your liking with such fervency, as you may be resolutely assured of my truth: Then I beseech you be not displeased with me, but according to your wonted kindness, accept me into your favour. My Lord (replyed she) I cannot deny but that your good will hath exceeded my deserts, for which I thank you: I wish, that I have always esteemed you, which likewise I would have done still, but now that opinion is altered, neither can I be induced to conceive well of him that would do me such

manifest

manifeſt injury as you have done: therefore I pray be contented with that favour you have had, for my affections are otherwiſe imployed, and my heart utterly diſagreeing to the motion you have made: with that ſhe eſpyed Piera in the garden coming towards her, to whom ſhe went down, ſaluting her moſt kindly. Piera thought now to have delivered her brothers Letter, but by reaſon there was diverſe in the company, ſhe could not then performe it: after a while they left each other; Piera returning to her chamber, and Conſtantia to a ſecret place in the Garden, where ſhe uttered theſe meditations: What contrarious diſquiets are theſe that poſſeſſe the Center of my heart? What inconveniences am I like to run into? & how ſhall I avoid blame for the one, and reap content by the other? How unkindly hath Prince Helion uſed me, to make this mention to my Father, whoſe diſpoſition muſt not be croſt without hazard of much diſquiet? My kindneſs to him hath cauſed this over-fond conceit of himſelf, and brought me into much trouble: I could have loved him before I come to the ſight of Perſicles, whoſe gifts are ſo far exceeding his; ỹ whereas my heart loved him, the thought of that love is now moſt grievous; wherein I may do my ſelf great wrong, for in hope of his affection, I refuſe Helions love, which may deprive me of both, purchaſe my Fathers heavy diſpleaſure, & my own perpetual diſcontent. Revolving a Chaos of theſe and ſuch like confuſed cogitations, which overcame her ſenſes with their ambiguity; with a heavy and diſcontented vein ſhe went to her Chamber, thinking there to conſider of every particular at full; where ſhe found Piera all alone ſtaying her coming in, who ſoon eſpyed ỹ Conſtitantia had wept, whereupon ſhe took occaſion to ſay as followeth. My beloved Siſter, I am ſorry to ſee you in this heavy and ſad vein, always finding you either ſad or weeping: which maketh me wonder, and deſire to know the cauſe, as one willing in any ſort to counſel you, and comfort you with my uttermoſt aſſiſtance: I have of purpoſe entred your Chamber to have ſome conference in private with you, being a Meſſenger ſent to you by my brother Perſicles, who I know loveth you dearly, who by me humbly commendeth himſelf unto you, being ſorry ỹ his ſudden departure was ſuch, that he could not before his going, do you that ſervice you deſerve,

serve, withal desired me to deliver you this Letter. Constantia without making reply received the Letter, & read the same, which when she had done, she said: Dear Sister, I thank you for taking this pains to come to me, and not rather to have sent for me, that rest at your command: And also I thank that worthy King Perficles, that he will vouchsafe me that undeserved favour, as to esteem wel of my unworthiness, to whom I am bound in all honourable respects, but how unfit am I to entertain love, your self would judge, if you knew mine estate, which upon assurance of your secresie I will unfold: Prince Helion vainly presuming he was assured of my favour, hath asked my fathers consent to a Marriage betwixt him & me, which he hath granted unto: but the Heavens can testifie, it is disagreeing to my heart, and altogether without my consent, which he shall never attain, what danger soever I incurr thereby, which if Perficles did understand, would soon alter his mind: therefore it is best for his quiet, not to place his affections on me so unworthy, but let me alone to endure the affliction that is like to ensue.

I know (quoth Piera) that my Brothers love is so constant, that nothing can alter ỳ same, which I e related to me at large; wch makes me to testifie ỳ assurance therof, wh ch would you but accept of, or give me some comfortable hopes in his absence, I should think my self bound to you for ever, and to have done him a great pleasure: for nothing but ỳ happy tidings of your favour can comfort him. The Emperor will not compel you to marry Helion, when he understandeth that you are otherwise bent, for ỳ were cruelty: & I think Helion himself beareth not so dishonourable a mind, as to seek your love by constraint, for ỳ were inhumanity: But would you yield to like of my Brothers love, who is every way as good as the Prince of Arabia, the knowledge thereof would soon make him return to ask your fathers consent, which may peradventure stand as well affected to him, as to Prince Helion. Ah me (said Constantia) Sister, I need not doubt to reveal my secrets to you, that I know for Perficles sake will conceal them. I confess without further circumstances that I love that noble King Perficles, which is the cause of this disquiet: nor did my fancy ever yield the least conceit of liking Helion's love, which I took to be rather grounded upon common

familiarity than pretence of marriage: therefore now ẏ you are assured of that which you request, I beseech you not to conceive amiss of my rash confession, nor esteem my love light because of so short continuance, for it is immoveable: but rather comfort my poor disquieted heart with your counsel, how to avoid these inconveniences: and if that worthy Knight be so affected towards me, as your speeches & this Letter affirms, I would wish his return might be speedy, otherwise my sorrows will be endless; for I know my Fathers nature to be such, that whatsoever he will have, must be performed, though equity would perswade the contrary. Grieve not so much (qd. Piera) with premeditated conceit of fear, which peradventure will never come to pass; I will present ẏ send Messengers to my brother, who shall carry such news as will comfort his heart, and cause his speedy return; in the mean time I will make Deloratus acquainted with Helion's practise, not Persicles love, who shall perswade all that may be, not to consent to marry you against your will. Be then of good comfort, & in assurance of Persicle's loyalty, let no fear disquiet your senses, or impair your health, for things now at the worst, may have a good end; These speeches ended, they departed.

All this while Helion was meditating how to hasten ẏ marriage; but most of all to find ẏ cause of Constantiaes discontent, which he thought was agravated against him, by some good conceit which she had lately entertained of some other then himself, which made him prosecute the same with more fervency, dealing so effectually with the Emperor, ẏ he swore Constantia should be ruled by him, & there upon the next day sent for her, to whom he said: Daughter, I think it is not unknown to you, that I have promised you in Marriage to Prince *Helion*, one that is every way worthy to match with you, both for nobleness of birth, vertuous qualities, and comeliness of person: withal, I am given to understand that you like not my choise, nor esteem my command, which if you neglect, you shall not only displease me, but lose my favour for ever, for as you are mine, I purpose to dispose of you, but if you refuse my counsel, refuse me too, for I will not regard a disobedient Child: The manifold reasons I could alledge, that perswade me to the confirmation of this contract, are

of

of ſuch weight, as I might ſeem careleſs of your welfare, and your ſelf invious of your own good, to deny them; therefore let me know your anſwer.

Conſtantia well knew that if ſhe denyed, he would be offended, and his froward nature was ſo much diſpoſed to wrath, that before ſhe could ſpeak ſhe ſhook for fear: yet reſolving to hazard the worſt, humbling her ſelf upon her knee, ſhe made this anſwer: My reverend duty to you, moſt loving Father, perſwadeth my conſent to fulfil your command, though my love binds me to the contrary, that I ſtand perplex'd between two extreams, the one fearing to offend you, the other to procure my everlaſting diſcontent; for in refuſing to do according to your will, I ſhall incur your indignation, and in performing the ſame, my everlaſting ſorrow, for as yet my heart could never yield to love that worthy Prince, who is far too worthy to be matcht with me; moſt humbly beſeeching you to conſider, that forced love never breeds content, but diſquiet, which with *Helion* will be my portion. therefore I beſeech you revoke your determination.

Is it ever ſo (quoth he) ſhall my command be countervailed by your peeviſh conceit? Is this the regard you gave to my good will? Are you wiſer then I? or are you willing to diſpleaſe me? Shall my will ſtand at your direction? Is this the duty you owe to your Father? Or fear you no more to offend me? Have I ſo carefully brought you up, and tenderly regarded you for this? Henceforth never come in my ſight, for I will not eſteem thee as a Child, but as a Baſtard: and withal, I vow, that if thou doſt not yeild to marry him, uſe him kindly, and apply thy devotions to his liking, I will uſe thee in ſuch ſort, that all *Perſia* ſhall lament thy caſe. Having given her this bitter reproof, he departed, leaving her weeping the fountain of her eyes dry, wringing her hands, & like one in a dead trance overcome with grief, caſt upon the earth: The firſt that entred the room was Helion, who ſeeing her in that agony, took her by the hand to have raiſed her from the ground: but ſhe refuſing his help, uttered theſe ſpæches. Until this time I always eſteemed honourably of you: but now my good opinion is altered, for that you ſeek only my torment: My Father hath given me charge to Marry with you, which I muſt againſt my heart fulfil: but be aſſured

never to possess my love, for that I have bequeathed to another, onely my outward parts may be yours, but my inward affections shall continually esteem you as the onely occasioner of my endlesse miseries: with that she arose from the ground and departed, leaving him there as one astonied.

Piera made Constantiaes estate known to Deloratus, who so far as he durst, perswaded her Father not to constrain her to marry the Prince: but such wilfulness possessed him, that the more they entreated him, the more contrarious he was, & therefore appointed the day for the Marriage to be within two months, and desiring the King of Arabia's consent, he sent Embassadors to that effect.

Piera hearing this, presently sent Messengers into Assyria, to certifie Perithoes of all that had happened: & withal Writ a Letter which contained the whole sum of Constantiaes consent to his love: who with all diligence hasted until they arrived there, being presently conducted into his presence: After he had most kindly embraced them, he demanded how Piera did, & what Message they had brought from her: Whereupon they delivered the Letters they had brought: which when he had read, he commanded the Knights to give the Messengers honourable entertainment, and departed to his Tent: one way so much comforted, and another way so deep troubled, that he sat down in a study, not knowing what to resolve upon.

When he had a long space meditated, with what contrarieties his fortunes were crost, the danger his Countrey was in, how likely he was to lose Constantia, & how difficult to attempt her possession, & many others, at last he thought his life should be nothing without her love: and therefore he fully resolved to hazard the same to attain it; but it seemed impossible which way to accomplish the same: For first the Armenians war hazarded his Kingdom, whom he could not suddenly expel: Next, to attempt to win by force, that could not be, for the Persian was too mighty: Lastly, delay might breed a greater mischief than all the rest: then calling unto him two of his chiefest Nobles, the one named Parenus a wise Counsellor: the other Thrureus a noble Warrior, he uttered his mind to them, saying: I have sent for you, as the men I most respect and trust, being determined

ned to commit to your charge ẏ Government of my Kingdom, for that weighty business, and such as concerns my everlasting welfare, must for a season withdraw me: And for that I am fully assured of your loyalty, I will use no exhortation to perswade you thereto, but order the same in this sort, Thrureus resembling me much, both in proportion and countenance, shall in my absence take my room: whom the people will assuredly take to be my self, and so govern them with more ease: and you Parenus, by your wisdome order all things according thereto. Thus you know my mind, which I doubt not but you will accomplish in every respect according to my desire: they first entreated him not to depart, but when they saw nothing could prevail, they swore they would faithfully execute what he had given them in charge: likewise told them, that he would depart within three days, which he deferred so long, by reason the second day the Armenians and Assyrians should meet: having ended his conference with them, he returned to the Messengers that came from Persia, sending Letters to Piera, which gave her knowledge that he would be there suddenly.

The prefixed day for the battel was now come, and both Armies met, betwixt whom there was a terrible fight, and many thousands on both sides slain: The Armenians greedy of their Enemies overthrow, followed them so eagerly, that they began to sound a Retreat: Perficles seeing that, left the place of his Government, & with his Lance ready couched, met an Armenian Duke so full, that he pierced ẏ same quite through his body, then drawing his Sword, with the same he slew the next: and after him wounded others; ẏ within a while he made such slaughter amongst them, that they avoided the place of his sight and thought themselves best that were furthest off him. Thus valorously did he persue them, till he was unawares in ẏ midst of their Army, which advantage the King of Armenia espyed, & thinking his life within his power, ran at him with a Lance, pointed with steel, but it miss him; and Perficles seeing him, met so full with the pummel of his sword against his breast, that had not his Steed pelted, he had broken his back; with that the Armenians assailed him round about with such unequal odds, being a multitude to one, that sometimes they were thrust so near

upon

upon him in the throng, that they swayed him up & down, those that came next him dyed by his sword, their dead bodies falling down between his Steeds legs, which made him lay about with such fury, that he soon made them give way. In the mean time, whilst the most part of the Battel were bent to destroy him, the Assyrians had made such a slaughter amongst the out-wings of the Army, that most of them were slain, and the rest fled, Thrureus fearing Persicles harm, for that he missed him, with his followers, soon found him out, and by that means rescued him from the multitude, who had unhorsed him, being constrained to fight on foot, being scarce able to with-hold himself from stambling on the dead Carcasses of those whom he had slain. Thrureus soon got him re-mounted & then both of them perused their enemies so fiercely, that they began to flie, and had not the day then ended, they had all been destroyed, which caused Persicles to sound a Retreat, & betake him to his Tent, having that day done such deeds at arms, as made both his own Subjects, and the Armenians admire him.

Early the next morning word was brought him, ỹ his enemies were all fled, & not any of them to be found in the Camp, having left all their riches behind them: which much rejoyced Persicles to hear, for that they should be no hindrance to his journey, and commanded his Souldiers to take the spoyl, and bury the Dead: and because he had received never a mortal wound, he determined the next day to depart, which he acquainted Pareneus & Thrureus withal, requesting them not to discover his absence till his return.

Having ordered every thing according to his mind, the next morning he departed, attiring himself like a Palmer, with a staff in his hand, which disguise shadowed him from knowledge, that he past his own Court gates undescryed, which assured him that if his own Subjects and Servants knew him not, much-less would strangers, that he passed without fear of being discovered. In this sort did he travel, thinking it no penance to take pains to find out his Love, until he arrived in Persia, yet not knowing which way to accomplish his intent, or come to speech either of Piera or Constantia, for he was a stranger, being denied to enter the Court gates, where he stayed attending his good

for-

fortune some three days: but as far from hopes then, as at his first coming, that he was so tormented in his thoughts, that he could not tell what to do: The next day he heard that the King should go forth a hunting, which made him presently suppose (for that the Park was so near the Court) the Ladies likewise would see the pastime, hoping by some means or other to give one of them knowledge of his arrival, then he did write a Letter, the Contents thereof were these:

To *Constantia* or *Piera*.

THese I write to either of you; my fortune being doubtful to whom I should deliver this: The Palmer that delivered this Letter is *Persicles*, that desireth to speak with one of you: for he saith, you are both as dear to him as his own soul: Attending a happy hour, I end,

Yours, Persicles.

The next day according to his hopes, the King & Queen, Deoratus, Piera, Helion and Constantia, and many others came forth, whom Persicles soon espyed, and well noting Constantiaes countenance, perceived ẏ same to be darkned, as if she had been fully possessed with discontent: who coming near him, (for he stood so as they must passe by him) casting her eyes upon him, beheld him so earnestly, that she almost forgot her self, feeling her heart to throb with unwonted motion, that she let fall her rich Scarf, most curiously embroidered, which occasion Persicles soon espyed, & waiting for such an opportunity took up ẏ Scarf, and with a great reverence gave it her, conveying ẏ Letter closely therein. ẏ she soon espyed the same, wherewith her heart began to panting: & viewing the superscription, found it directed to her, or Piera, that closely she put the same in her bosome, lest Helion or any else should espy it, till she could find opportunity to read it. By this time the Game was roused, & all but she alone followed the pastime with earnestnesse: which she b holding, withdrew her self with one of her Ladies, & read the Letter, the which affected her heart with joy & fear, ẏ sometimes her heart

leap'd

leap'd with the one, and her eyes stood ready to over-flow with tears with the other, presently following the company until she overtook Piera, to whom she said: Sister, did not you behold the Palmer that stood in the way as we came by the Palace wall? Yes (quoth she) and do not you know him, said Constantia? it is your Brother Persicles.

With that she smiled, saying: How can that be, or what maketh you to think so? With that she pulled out the Letter, and bad her read it, which when she had done, she said: Constantia, he is worthy to be kindly used, having travelled so far on foot to see us. Yea (quoth Constantia) how can we come to speak with him? or how may we give him that welcome his worthinesse deserveth, that for my unworthy self hath undertaken to hazard his Royal person in travel? Let me alone (quoth Piera) and the better to avoid suspition, use Helion somewhat more kindly then heretofore you have done, that his mind may be void of jealousie, for I perceive when you come in any place or company he hath a vigilant eye over you.

And calling to her a Damosel named Dela, one that was privy to all her secret counsels, to whom she said: Go thy way, and find out the Palmer that thou sawest as we came, for it is Persicles, conduct him into my Chamber, where let him stay till I return, and if any one ask ther what he is, tell them he is of Assyria, and bringeth me news from the King my Brother.

Dela hasted and soon found him out, reverently saluting him, and called him by his name, which made him marvel that she knew him, until she delivered her Message, which he was ready to fulfil, as the onely thing he desired: And having brought him into the Court, which she did without contradiction, she returned to certifie her Mistris thereof, whom she met with Constantia, and some few before the rest, returning to the Court, being desirous to see Persicles, who now entred the Palace, were soon espyed of him, which affected his heart with such content as it seemed to ravish his senses.

Constantia was possessed likewise with such contrarious passions, sometimes of Fear, Joy, Bashfulness, Desire, and modest Love, that her heart seemed to dissolve, and all the Arteries of her body wrought with internal and strange motions: By this

time

time they were ascended the stairs, and Persicles ready to meet them, who first saluted Piera, (as reserving the best for the last) which he performed superficially, in respect of the behaviour he used to Constantia, whose modesty made her blush, whilst he bereaved her of a sweet kiss, who with as mild a countenance, as if modesty her self had been there, bad him welcome.

Most divine Lady (quoth he) I cannot express my thankfulness by outward means, for that my heart both wisheth, an intendeth more good to you then my tongue can utter, being so far bound to you, (in respect of my slender and small deserts) for your esteeming well of me, that I shall never be able to discharge the debt: And although you have little cause, by reason of the small proof you have had of my fidelity, to yeild me love, yet if my faithful vow may satisfie you, and my plighted promise of continual constancy assure you, you shall find me both constant in love to you, faithful to deal honourably with you, and loyal not to do any thing I shall be disagreeable to your will.

My Lord (said Constantia) in full assurance of your good meaning, my heart willingly affecting you more then any other without further delay, I yield my self up to your disposition, desiring you not to misconceive me: And though I am too unworthy of such account as you make of me, my possession being linked to so many inconveniences, yet since it is your desire to have it so, I am ready to be ruled according to your directions.

Piera then said: Let us further conference for this time cease, because I hear of the Kings return; and for this night I will provide for my Brothers security, with whom I will confer about this business, until you may conveniently meet again.

This said, Persicles took his leave of Constantia, with many ceremonious farewels, each party interchanging their hearts, such perfect love was established betwixt them, Persicles went to a secret Chamber to meditate; Piera to accompany her Husband, and Constantia with an outward merry (though inwardly heavy) heart to welcome Helion.

CHAP. III.

How *Constantia* disguised her self, and departed the Emperours Court with *Persicles*.

WIthin this place stay'd Persicles so long, without means how to accomplish his desire, which was to convey away Constantia, that the prefixed day for the performance of the Marriage approached near, which drove them to their utmost shifts, knowing y now or never it was to be done.

Constantia coming to Pierces Chamber, with a heavy heart, and watrey eyes, demanded whether they had yet determined how she should escape? but hearing them make no answer, said thus: My Lord, since the fear you have I should be discovered, and so dishonoured, maketh you unwilling to have me hazard my self, the time of my pretended wedding now draweth nigh, which I most abhor; because I love none but your self, provide but for your own departure out of the Court without being discovered; and stay for me in the evening under the Myrtle tree by the Pallace wall, and thither will I assuredly come to you; but by what means as yet I know not.

Persicles was glad to hear her speeches, but he was much troubled in mind, that his misfortune was such, that he could not carry her from thence, without she her self should hazard her escape alone: Nevertheless, seeing her forwardness, which was an infallible token of her constancy: with many thanks & farewells, until their happy meeting again, they parted: with such careful hearts, and outward sign of sorrow, as was sufficient to have made the hardest heart of any remorseless beholder to lament them.

Persicles soon departed, and without disturbance (for in that habit he was not known) and soon got to the Myrtle Tree, whereunder he sat down, and uttered many invocations for his Loves fortunate escape: thinking that she alone should endure this hazard, but whatsoever extreamity did follow should be born by him.

Constantia being in her Chamber with Dela, many thoughts possest

poſſeſt her fancy, and ſundry deviſes were ſoon invented, and as ſoon out of content, that many ſhe bethought her of, but none of them ſeemed current. At laſt, looking out of a Window, ſhe eſpyed a Country Damoſel enter the outer Court of the Palace, with a Basket on her arm, wherein were Grapes; which ſhe came of purpoſe to preſent unto Conſtantia for their fairneſs, being a gift worthy of acceptation. The Porter knowing her mind ſent her to the Princeſſes Chamber with a Gentleman. Conſtantia ſeeing that ſhe came to her, cauſed her to come in, receiving her preſent moſt graciouſly: The Gentlemen being departed, Dela by Conſtantiaes appointment, led the Maid into a ſecret Chamber, telling her that it was her Miſtreſſes pleaſure ſo much to grace her, that ſhe ſhould attend on her, and not return to her Fathers houſe: The Damoſel being glad of that preferment, gave her many thanks. Dela then cauſed her to put off her own apparel, & put on Conſtantiaes; which done ſhe left her, and carried her homely weeds to Conſtantia, which ſhe preſently put on, diſrobing her ſelf of her rich ornaments, caſting aſide all other care, but only to attain her love: And the evening being now, (the time of her everlaſting weal, or woe) ſhe took the Damoſels Basket on her arm, and firſt with many farewels to Dela, commendations to Piera, and heavy ſighs to leave her Parents, not knowing what miſ-fortune might befall her, with the water ſtanding in her eyes, which to her utmoſt power ſhe reſtrained, did go down the ſtairs, and from thence into the Court, behaving her ſelf ſo decently, that none that met her, had any thought but ỹ ſhe had been a perfect Damoſel: and ſo ſhe paſſed until ſhe came to the Porter, who knowing of her coming in, denyed not to let her out. Conſtantia having paſſed thus far without ſuſpect, thought not to be long in going to ỹ appointed place, but fear & hope haſtening her ſteps, ſhe ſometimes ran, and ſometimes went: & then again looked behind her, as if ſome purſued her: ran until ſhe had got a ſight of the tree, where under the ſame ſhe beheld her love, who afar off beheld her: but in that habit knew her not: to whom ſhe approached ſo nigh, that he noting her well, knew her, and embraced her in his arms, ſaying: My deareſt Love, a thouſand times welcome, and more deſired of me, than all the Riches in the World, for ever

shall this day be blest, and the hour of this our happy meeting accounted fortunate; let all that wear this habit be happy, and enjoy their most desired content: and let this Tree, whersoever growing, be esteemed above all others, for that it was the appointed place of our meeting: let the evening be the most pleasant time for Lovers meeting; and let all those be fortunate in their meetings, whose hearts harbour true love. My dear (quoth he) I cannot express the joy my heart conceives at your presence, being sorry that you are thus driven to hazard your person for my sake: being as likewise sorry that I have no place of security to carry you unto, for in this place we must not stay long: therefore let us depart the nearest way to Assyria, and fortune that hath shewed her self so gently, may favour us with more happy success.

My Lord (quoth Constantia) now that I have attained your presence, I have found the Harbor I expected, where my heart shall rest, what hereafter you shall intend, I will be as well contented with, as your self, therefore direct your steps what way you please, I will bear you company.

Persicles his heart was glad to see her so chearful, that folding his arms in hers, the night being now approached, they walked along: She by the way discoursing on the manner of her escape.

To relate the conference between them, were too tedious: but the most part of the night they continued travelling so fast, as Constantiaes feeble legs would carry her, who though not accustomed to such labour, yet endured the same so chearfully, as it had been a wonder to behold, but at last arriving in a solitary place, where seldom any frequented but Shepherds: the night being far spent, and Constantia weary, they seated themselves down upon a bank, and their minds being now somewhat eased of cares, their bodies wearied with travel, and the place void of disturbance: after some delightful conference, Constantia slept, and Persicles did the like, not awaking till the Suns bright Beams glimmering upon them, awaked them.

Persicles's heart now began to be troubled where to get food for Constantia, which he was out of hope to attain in those solitary Walks: and rising up to view the place well, and which way

next

next to travel, he espyed a Shepherds Cottage hard by, to which he and Constantia went, and knocking at the door, the Shepherds Wife came forth, who espying such unlooked for Guests, started back, saying: What would you have?

Mother, (said Persicles,) my Wife and I (for so he thought best to call her to avoid suspition) travelling towards Assyria, by mis-fortune yesternight lost our way, and having wandred up and down all this night, that we are both weary, especially my Wife, who hath not been used to such unrest: Our desire is, to rest our selves, and get us food if it may be in this place; which kindness if you will afford us, we will pay you for the charge we put you to, and withal rest thankful.

The Shepherdess noting them well, thought them other then their habit declared, with whom his kind words so much prevailed, that she desired them to come in, telling them that all her house rested at their disposition; so they both entred & willingly sat down to rest themselves; but Persicles asking the old woman what meat she had, she told him she had none at all, but if it pleased him, she would be ready to fetch any thing he would send for at a Village hard by.

Whereupon the old woman went out to buy meat, leaving them in the house alone; in whose absence Persicles desired Constantia not to be offended with him, for saying she was his wife? For (said he) should I name you my sister, or otherwise, it would breed in them some suspition: withal, they hearing of your escape, which may by some means or other come to their knowledge, will the sooner suspect you; but under that name you are void of knowledge.

Constantia was content to be ruled by him in any thing, whose heart would now have conceived the height of content, had not fear to be discovered darken'd the same. In which place we will leave them to speak of Helion.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of a merry Jest that befel *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*.

COnstantia being down the staires, Dela as soon left ȳ Country Maid, to tell Piera what was done: and to ask her counsel what to do: who hearing all, at last had her return to the Damosel, and carry her some meat for her supper, but so closely that none might see her go out or in: which Dela performed, and telling her where she should lye, left her, altering her Garments and Attyres in such sort, that she knew her not again. The Maid being alone, was soon tempted to taste these dainty meats, so; that she was very hungry, thinking her self most happy, to be so exalted, and dantily fed: and seeing her soft bed, her Belly being full, and being at home not used to sit up late, drawing the Curtains close about her, she was no sooner laid but fell fast asleep.

Helion all that evening, marvelled he could not see Constantia, but not seeing Piera, was satisfied, thinking they had been together. When Supper was ended, he determined to see her, and went to Pieraes Chamber, thinking to find her there, who told him that she was not there that afternoon: from thence he went to her lodging, and finding the door shut, which being but latch'd he opened, and shut it softly again: ȳ with stealing steps, passed through ȳ first room unto the next, where he saw a light burning through the Hangings, which he softly leaped aside, and looking into the Chamber, saw no body, and Constantiaes apparel there, and drawing nigh the bed, perceived that she was asleep, and standing by her, as being loth to wake her, yet unwilling to leave her, he uttered these meditations.

Sweet Fortune hath appointed this happy hour in favour of my true Love, that hath with constancy long attended my love, but never was graced with any title of her favour: which opportunity if I over-slip, it may be I shall never attain the like: If I should attempt to awake her, could she be offended? If I should further ask her consent to possess her love, could she take it in ill part: No, she knows my love is Loyal, and therefore will

will not be offended : But this feareth me most, I never as yet had any favour at her hand ; She for ought I see regarded me not, but instead of my love repaies me with scorn; yet in that I may be deceived ; Peradventure she hath used me so, to make tryal of me ; and also done this to try whether I would like a Coward for fear of displeasure, leave the scaling of so sweet a Fort, therefore be my Fortune good or bad, I will hazard the worst. Then taking the Damosel by the hand, who slept so soundly, that he could hardly awake her, said ; Constantia, be not offended with me, it is your faithful friend Helion y speaks to you ; missing you, I have thus boldly presumed into your Chamber, which I found but slightly shut, and fearing you had been sick, I came to visit you, desiring you to grant me this favour, both to pardon this bold intrusion, and let me stay to be your Guardian; which said, very boldly he kist the Damosel twice or thrice. The Maiden hearing his speeches, was so amazed, that she could not speak ; involving many things in her doubtful brain what he should be, and why the Princess had appointed her to lye in that place ? But being unacquainted with the fashions of the Court, she thought it had been the custome there (as she had heard her Father report) for every one to have a Lover, lay still, and said nothing ; which animated Helion to such confidence, that fastning the door, extinguishing the light, & puting off his Apparel, he lept into the Bed ; and first asking pardon with many humble speeches ; repeating with what constancy he had deserved her, and how faithfully he intended for ever to love her ; he folded her in his Arms, using such behaviour as soon tempted the Damosel to yield ; whom he bereft of her Virginity, to both their contents: He on one side thinking he had embraced the fair Constantia, and she supposing she had got a rich and kind Lover.

When he had stayed with her so long as he could for fear of being discovered, for that the day began to appear, he told her that now to his hearts grief he must leave her ; which she was unwilling he should do ; that by her embraces, kisses, and other kind behaviour, he stayed longer than he would have done ; and took such full possession of her before he went, that she thought her self the happiest Maid alive, and he himself the most fortunately

nately blessed in the possession of so sweet a Love. At last parting with many farewels, the Damosels eyes somewhat dazeled with the sport, laid her down again and slept soundly, until she thought it time to rise.

When the day was somewhat aged by the height of ỳ Sun, Helion with an exceeding merry countenance, taking a rich standing cup of beaten gold, full fraught with the purest Wine, attyring himself in the richest Robes, went to Constantiaes chamber to present her therewith, & entring therein he found his Bed-fellow attyred in Constantiaes Ornaments; with which sight he was so amazed, that he stood like one in a trance, thinking himself either blind, or that she was metamorphosed.

The Damosel likewise espying him, was ashamed to see him stand gazing on her with such a wild countenance, ỳ she blushed exceedingly; at last Helion fearing some deceit, said, where is Constantia, that you are attyred in her Ornaments? to whom the Damosel made answer, I know not where she is, her Maid had me put on this Apparel yesterday, appointing me to stay here till her return.

Helion then perceiving that he was deceived, and the damosel instead of Constantia had been his Paramour that night, whom he desired to tell him whether Constantia had of purpose perswaded her to do that, and also if she knew where she was: for know (quoth he) thou hast not bestowed thy Virginity on an unworthy person, but upon the Prince of Arabia.

The Damosel humbling her self upon her knees, told him all that she knew, whereby he then perceived that Constantia was fled, by reason that he could not find the Damosels apparel, and taking her by the hand, said: Damosel, I perceive Constantia still rejecteth me, and therefore as thou in her stead hast taken possession of my love, that good will and affection which formerly I bare to her, will I bear to thee, and hereafter prefer thee to such dignity, as otherwise thou shouldest never attain unto: withal requesting thee to conceal my being with thee this night from any, for if it should be known, it would redound to thy punishment, and my shame: But when question is made for Constantia, tell all thou knowest of thy coming hither, but nothing of me. And in sign of my good will, I drink to thee in this Cup

of

of wine, which I thought Constantia should have tasted of; This said: he left the Damosel, and so secretly as he might he went to his own lodging, so grieved in his mind, ỹ he vowed to be revenged, were it by never so cruel means, in his heart hating her whom he before doted on; which is a sign of an inconstant disposition, for true love will never alter.

It was not long before Constantia was missed, and the news thereof came to the Emperor her Father, who with ỹ Empress marvelled thereat, causing all diligent search to be made, but no other news was heard of her, but that she was gone, and a Stranger left in her stead; who being brought before the Emperor, told the cause of her coming, and how she was used by a Gentlewoman that waited on Constantia, whereupon the Emperor caused all the Ladies and Gentlewoman in the Court to come before him, but amongst them all she could not tell which was she, for Dela had altred her apparel in such sort, that the Damosel was ignorant of knowing her, as any of the rest.

The Emperor was so exceedingly enraged, that he was ready to tear the hair from his head, commanding that the Damosel should be punished, but at the entreaty of the Empress she was onely in disgraceful sort turned out of the Court Gates: The Emperor at that time in a great rage, betaking himself to his solitary Chamber, to study which was the best way to find his Daughter.

Helion pitying the Damosel, being now more in love with her then ever he was with Constantia, called unto him one of his most trustiest servants, willing him in secret sort to follow ỹ Maid, and to give her a Purse of Gold, and tell her who sent it, and to conduct her home to her Fathers house, that he may know where to find her; which done he presently went to the Emperor, desiring him speedily to send forth Messengers to find Constantia, who thinking he had requested him thereunto with his former pretence of love, caused twenty of his Knights privately to be brought before him, to whom he declared his intent, which was: That (without making any privy thereunto) they should that night depart several ways in search for his Daughter the Lady Constantia.

All things being compleat according to his mind, and the

Knights having taken their Oaths of Fidelity and Secresie, and departed, the Emperor rested, calming his disquiet with so merry a countenance, as none supposed but that he had remitted all in regard of Constantia, which was so closely affected, that the Knights were dispersed every where in the Country, before any question was made of her absence.

Helion's servant, sir-named Aldrus, soon overtook the Damosel, delivering her the gift his Lord had sent, which she received with many thanks; telling her likewise that he had sent him to attend her home, which she was also glad of, fearing her Parents displeasure for staying so long, who knew her not at first sight, but afterwards was satisfied by Aldrus, who learning her name, which was Selia, left her.

CHAP. VI

The pleasures that passed between the two faithful Lovers, *Persicles* and *Constantia*, in the Shepherds Cottage: And how a Knight that was sent in their search, found them.

NOw the day being far spent, the shepherds wife returned with the Provision which she had bought, dressing the same very cleanly, though after her Country fashion; whereon Persicles and Constantia fed heartily, spending the rest of the day in talk with the Old woman, until at night the old shepherd & his son came home, who wondred to see such Guests at his House, and such chear at the fire, that was wont to sup with a Crab put into sowre Whig; and calling aside his Wife, before they would enter, demanded what they were. Husband (quoth she) they came hither in the morning, desiring me to let them have but house-room; for losing their way, they have wandred about all night, and are sore weary: they are the kindest people that ever I saw, good husband bid them welcome. The good old man wared so kind by his Wives entreaty, that he came in, telling them they were most heartily welcome, and that all he had was at their command.

Persicles gave them many thanks, being much comforted with their kindness, which he found disagreeing to the humours of Rustick

Ruſtick people. Supper time ended, the old woman called her Husband aſide, to know where they ſhould lye: Marry (qu. he) in our own bed, and we for this time will make ſome other proviſion, therefore make the ſame ready in the beſt ſort you poſſibly can.

Which ſaid, the old woman went about the ſame, and the Old Man coming to them, ſaid: Becauſe I know you not, I cannot tell what Title to give unto you; but leſs then born of Noble blood I am ſure you are not: I am ſorry my Wealth affordeth me no better entertainment to welcome you withal, but ſuch as our homely Cottage yieldeth ſhall be at your diſpoſition, deſiring you to accept of our good will, inſtead of better performance. My wife is making ready your bed, which though homely, yet it is cleanly, we having no choice but only that, deſiring you to accept it as the beſt.

I thank you good friend (quoth Perſicles) but we ſhall be unmannerly to thruſt you forth of your own lodging, therefore we will rather ſit up, than diſturb you. Not ſo (ſaid the old man) I have all my life time been brought up to hardineſs, and can endure it well, which I am ſure you cannot do without hazard of your healths: then came the old woman, who brought them a light to conduct them to the Chamber, which ſhe had dreſſed ſo finely with green Ruſhes and ſweet Flowers, that it was moſt pleaſant, though not coſtly, and leaving them there, departed.

Conſtantia ſeeing them gone, began to bluſh, to think ſhe muſt be Perſicles's bed-fellow; which he perceiving, folding her in his Arms, ſaid: Now Conſtantia you muſt be a Wife before you are married, which name you cannot now refuſe, having given your conſent thereto already: I muſt of force be your Bed-fellow, unleſs you would have me lye on the green Ruſhes: therefore I pray you tell me, whether you are willing to favour me ſo much, or no?

Conſtantia betwixt a modeſt baſhfulneſs, and a modeſt deſire, ſtood mute, not knowing whether to conſent, or deny: Sometimes thinking her denyal might diſquiet him, and to yield might make him ſuſpect her of lightneſs; ſo that between fear and hope, ſhe continued ſilent, as if ſhe had been overcome with a deep ſtudy.

Persicles smiling thereat, said: My dear Love, I know with what motives your mind is now agitated: If you think it will impair your honor to be my Bed-fellow, I will rather lose my life than perswade you thereto, but if you vouchsafe to let me lie by you in most vertuous sort, I protest it shall be no dishonor to you, nor your Virgin purity shall not be spotted in the least thought of any unlawful attempt, wherein if you will trust me, you shall find that I will use you both as seemeth your estate, agrees with your honor, and the vertuous meaning of a true friend.

My Lord (said Constantia) do not think me so immodest as to distrust you, or so curious to think it will impair my name to be your Bed-fellow; onely I wish that the Rites of Marriage were performed, then I were at your disposition.

Lady (said he) what needeth such strict performance of these outward Ceremonies, which maketh not the marriage, but those are truly married, that with united hearts hath plighted promise of perpetual friendship, electing one another by true love, & not outward Ceremony, for where true love is not, there can be no perfect marriage, though the outward Ceremony be never so devoutly performed, therefore if my opinion can prevail with you, we being without means to use the outward Ceremony may confirm as true and constant a contract between our selves, as though it were established by the Rites of the church. This also makes me to use these reasons, since the means of the performance of that being wanting, we may nevertheless procure our happiness, for who are more happy than those that live in perfect love, though never so miserable, for my part I esteem your company above all joy, and the fruition of your love more dear to me, than a thousand lives without the same, then I beseech you, let my intreaties so much prevail, that I may with your free consent possesse your love, for I vow never to love, or chuse any other than your self.

Constantia hearing his speeches, and many other reasons that he alledged, made this answer: My Lord relying upon your vertues, true love, and honourable meaning, I yeild to your request, giving my consent to be your Wife for ever, desiring you to dispose of me according to your mind, for you shall find me al-

ways

ways obedient to your command. These speeches ended, with many kind embraces they addressed themselves to their Nuptial Bed, which resembled such a Bed indeed, for the old woman had deck'd the Bed with her best Linnen, and other furniture, stuck the same round about with sweet Roses, strewed the Chamber with green Rushes, filled the windows with green boughs and flowers so thick in every place, giving such a sweet savour, that it might well be termed a Shepherds Paradise.

The two Lovers being in bed, used that behaviour such Lovers do, thinking themselves fortunate, the place pleasant, their meeting happy, and their love sweet, enjoying their love without controul, love without lust, and pleasure without pride, he thinking his joys without compare, and she thinking none to be compared with hers, and the birds without singing their ditties instead of musick, and the sweet Philomela hard by the wall with a merry note rejoyced at their pleasure.

Thus did they pass over this night with exceeding content, and next day in communication with the Shepherd, who committed both the flocks to the government of his Son, for that himself would stay to bear them company, to whom he bare such an inward love, wrought in him by a natural motion, that he did think himself happy to do them any pleasure.

They stayed three days with the Shepherd, being past fear to be discovered, for they heard not of any enquiry that was made after them: At last one of the Knights that the Emperor of Persia had privily sent forth in their search, chanced to come into the Plains where the Shepherds Son was keeping his Sheep, to whom he said, Shepherd, didst thou not see a Damosel lately pass this way? Not I, answered he, why what Damosel is it you look for? The Knight either by his countenance or stuttering in his answer, supposing it might be he had seen her, said, It is a friend of mine, that I extreamly love, she promised me I should hear of her hereabout, but my fortune hath not been so good. I cannot tell (said the Boy) it may be my Father can tell you, who dwelleth hard by yonder thicket.

The Knight hearing that, left him, and rode to the Shepherds house, where he alighting, entring without calling, found the Shep-

Shepherd, his Wife, Persicles and Constantia, all together, and presently knowing her, said: Lady Constantia, the Emperor your Father, makes great lamentation for you at the Court: with that they knew they were betrayed: and she, what with fear and grief fell down in a Trance, whom with much ado they recovered. My friend (quoth Persicles) thou art either very unmannerly, or thy Authority is great, that thou intrudest thy self into our company: dost thou know this is Constantia? Then where is thy reverence to her? Were it not for disquieting the Lady that is already distempered with thy presence, thou shouldst find cold entertainment.

The Knight being much grieved to see Constantia thus disquieted, said: I am sorry my presence hath troubled her, which was against my mind, for be it far from my thoughts to disturb her: The Emperor of Persia missing her, hath sent out divers besides my self to seek her, with commandment to bring her back to the Court, and amongst the rest, you see it is fallen to my lot to perform it; yet such regard I do bear unto her, that I will not do any thing disagreeing to her honourable mind, Constantia hearing his speeches, said: what is your name? My name (said he) is Pisor. Art thou of Assyria (qu. Persicles) and one of the Knights belonging to Piera? I am, said he. Then I fear not said Persicles, but thou bearest a Knighly mind, and wilt rather conceal this Ladies being here, then betray her, by carrying her back, if not for hers, yet for Persicles thy King, whom she loves and thou should'st obey.

If it were (quoth he) to venture my life for my Prince, I would most willingly do it; and if the Lady loveth him, and for that hath left the Court, I will hazard my life in her defence, and to my utmost power procure her hearts desire. Then know (quoth he) that Persicles heareth thy kind speeches, and hath not failed in his opinion of thy vertues, for I am he though thus disguised, with that Pisor knew him, and humbled himself with great reverence on his knee.

Persicles rising up embraced him, telling him that he came in a most fortunate hour to do him good. Constantia with this was comforted again, and forgot her former passion and fear. The old shepherd and his Wife were half amazed, until Persicles

said,

said, Father, be not any way disquieted with my knowledge, for though I am King of Assyria I am thy Guest, and will requite thy kindness liberally, desiring thee not to discover me to any, for if thou shouldest, it would hazard this Ladies life, and mine, that are now in thy hands: they both bowed on their knees, nothing should make them so disloyal. Then he said to Pisor, of old experience I know thou lovest me, therefore I question not thy fidelity, or doubt not that thou wilt undertake any thing to pleasure me; therefore I would have thee with all speed to post into Assyria, to Pareneus and Thrureus, whom I left my Substitutes, & to them make my estate known, telling them my desire is, ỳ they come to me in this place, with a sufficient number of Horse-men to guard me and the Princess home, but let none know their intent (which I take to be ỳ best course for our safety) for if we should seek other means by travel, Constantia is not able to endure it, which also might be a means to discover us, so many being abroad in her search. Pisor presently obeyed him, and taking his leave, departed on his journey, leading them in the Shepherds Cottage.

CHAP. VI.

How *Helion* was in love with *Selia*; and hearing of his Fathers sickness, obtained leave to depart; and of the desolation that was in *Assyria* by the Treason of Duke *Oretus*.

HElion remembring the pleasure he had with his Country lover, desired much to see her again; with whom he was more deeply in Love than ever he was with Constantia, for the love he bare to her, was turned to hatred; and the cause of his opportunity to the Emperor to have her found, was with a malicious disposition of revenge, not of any honourable inclination; being of such variable and unconstant nature, that the least occasion altered his wavering mind, either to Love or Hatred, which was unfit for so great a man as he derived himself from.

Now having passed many days, colouring his presence under the shadow of feigned sorrow, he longed to visit his Lover Selia, where-

therefore finding a fit time for his intent, he with his man Aldrus rode thither, and found her cloathed again in her Country Weeds, who espying him, with a modest blush came to meet him, whom he embraced in his arms, asking her how she fared. My Lord (said she) your hand-maid rejoyceth to see your worthy person in this homely Cottage, whose heart can attain no quiet, but your remembrance. By this time her Parents was come in, who seeing the Prince, did him humble reverence, he also saluting them with great courtesie, and when he had stayed there most part of the day in private conference with his Love, he departed, the next day repairing thither again, which he did likewise for many days after.

In the end he grew to such extreamity of passion that he told Selia he would marry her, and withal made her Parents acquainted therewith, who willingly gave their consents thereto, and by this means he enjoyed her company at all times, according to his desire.

In this sort did he visit her many days, doting exceedingly on his Country Selia, thinking no Lady in the Court comparable unto her, and also dissembling exceeding grief for Constantia, that the Emperor highly commended his constancy, esteeming him the more, for not altring his mind. Within few days news was brought to the Persian Court, that the King of Arabia was very sick, which caused Helion to desire the Emperor of Persia's consent to his departure, which he granted, having first received his faithful Oath to marry Constantia, which he swore to perform at his return.

Most of the Knights that went in the search of Constantia are returned, not one of them bringing news of her, which put the Emperor into such a rage, that he seemed quite bereft of sense, causing them to make more open enquiry, and to promise great rewards to those that could tell any tydings of her.

By this time Pisor had been in Assyria, and again returned to the Shepherds house, whom Persicles welcomed, and glad that he was so soon returned: But Pisor's countenance signified ill News, which Persicles soon perceived, and being unwilling Constantia should hear ought that might breed in her any discontent, walked aside with him into the Thicket of a Wood hard

hard by the House, where Pisor said: My Lord, I have a tragick discourse to reveal: that maketh my heart melt to think thereof, which I would it had not been my ill fortune to have brought you news of.

At my coming into Assyria, I past many miles before I found an Assyrian to converse withal: For the Towns and Villages which before were compleat with store of inhabitants, were now consumed with fire, and not a house standing alone, but was spoiled, & the people from their dwellings fled away, which caused me to make the more haste, hoping that all was not destroyed: and coming more near the Court, in my way I found the bodies of the Assyrians lying dead, and strewed upon the earth, as if some battel had been lately fought in that place, those which lay dead seeming to have fled to save their lives.

And the farther I past, the more the number encreased, which I followed so long, that I was perswaded those that destroyed them were not far off, but yet went so far before me ỳ I could not overtake them, for the bodies of some were not yet cold, and others lay strugling to overmaster death: wherewith I was so amazed, that I set spurs to my Horses sides, and rode with all the haste I could until at last I espyed a mighty army of Souldiers right before me upon the Mount of Silo: whose multitude seemed to be innumerable: near unto which I was no sooner come, but I espyed an Assyrian grievously wounded, to whom I drew nigh, and soon knew him to be Parenus, and discovering my self to him, desired him to tell me what treason had brought him to that dangerous estate, with that he knowing me, (said: Pisor, such misery is befallen to us Assyrians, that we shall be a reproach and scandal to all the World, which I would repeat, but before I can make an end, death will stop my speech: therefore tell me how my Lady Piera fareth.

Noble Duke (said I) she is in good health, and in great prosperity: I refoyce thereat (quoth he) though I have otherwise everlasting cause to sorrow: For our Soveraign Lord ỳ King after he had put ỳ Armenians to flight, was very desirous upon some occasion (as yet unknown) to leave the Court, in his absence committing the Government thereof to my unhappy self, and the Noble Knight Thrureus, which we performed with

great quiet, until Duke Oretus, one that was never true unto the State, hearing of the Kings departure, which we could by no means conceal, raised a false report, that we had murthered the King: which rumour moved the common people to such disquiet that they began to rebel, which he perceiving, aiming thereby to win the Crown, gathered a great company of them together, with pretence of revenge against us: which when we heard of, with all speed we could possible, we mustred up men for our defence, but so eager were the multitudes to our destruction, together with Oretus his perswasions, that before we were any way able to resist them, they set upon us, and shed a great deal of their own Country-mens blood that stood in our defence, and constrained us to draw back our forces within the City.

The King of Armenia hearing of this rebellion, with great speed brought a mighty Army into this Land, destroying all that came in his way, burning both Towns and Cities, and destroying the common people with an exceeding great slaughter. Oretus hearing this, was struck with such a terror, that he fled, leaving his confederate Rebels to be destroyed by the Enemy, which caused us by a Herauld to demand, whether they would submit themselves to us or not, or by their treason to see their Countries ruine? With that they yielded, and we gathered all our forces together to resist the Enemy, with whom we fought three great battels, and in the same lost above thirty thousand Assyrians, being driven to flight. This day again, gathering head to resist them, and being too few in number, in respect of their strength and multitude, you see how our bodies lie mangled upon the earth, my self (I think) the last that liveth to tell this news, for the noble Thrureus is already slain, whose Deeds of Valour would contain a great volume, which news, when our King hears, it will no doubt cut off his vertuous life with sorrow, my greatest grief being that I cannot hear of his safety before my death.

My Lord (said I) our Gracious King is living, and in good health in Persia, who sent me unto your Honor, and Thrureus, with a Message, which I need not now unfold. Yes, good Pisor, (said he) let me hear my Lords Message, that I may thereby know whe-

whether I was still in his favour or no; with that I tol him the cause of my coming, which when he had heard, such a passion of discontent overcame hi vital Spirits, that with many bitter groans he gave up the Ghost. When I saw there was no way for his recovery, I departed to enquire what slaughter the enemy made, who by that time the day was ended, had banquished the Assyrian forces, and took the City, and most of the Nobility Prisoners: I stayed four days hiding me secretly, to bring you certain news, which is this: The King of Armenia compelled the Noblemen to swear Allegiance to Palian his Eldest Son, whom he hath Crowned King of Assyria, and left a mighty Army for his defence: When I understood this, I returned to certifie your Majesty thereof.

CHAP. VII.

How *Persicles* hearing the news by *Pisor*, departed into a solitary place, which caused the unfortunate separation betwixt him and *Constantia*, who in great sorrow wandring to seek him was found by *Helion*, and carried into *Arabia*; of the sorrows *Persicles* endured for her absence: How *Pisor* became Frantick.

PErsicles's heart was overcome with such sorrow, to hear Pisor's heavy news, ℣ he had much ado to contain himself from extream madness, that he minded a while to withdraw himself to utter his plaints in those solitary walks, but seeing Pisor follow him, desired him to return to the shepherds House, and in no case to acquaint Constantia with the mis-fortunes, but if she asked for him, he should tell her he would come presently. Pisor being departed, he sought for the most unfrequented place in the Wood, wandred long in that discontent, but could find none agreeable to his mind; not knowing where he went, or what he intended, his senses being dulled with that passionate veration, continuing so long therein; that he spent longer time in seeking out a place of rest, then he was ware of, which turned to his greatest unrest, as afterwards it fell out: for Constantia marvelling that he stayed so long, and noting Pisors

darkened countenance, supposed some ill news to be the cause, and finding occasion fit, thought to find her Love in the midst of his dumps, and with her amiable presence to comfort him, so stealing from the Cottage into the Wood, where Pisor told her that he had left him, she wandred up and down a great while, not finding him, which made her wonder, sometimes calling him, but not by his own name, least any should hear her: And finding that means to prevail nothing, she began to enter into many doubtful thoughts: sometimes calling his Loyalty in question; then again reproving her fancy for entring into suspition of him; then thinking some ill news was hapned in Assyria, which might drive him into a careless desperation, fearing that some of the Persian Knights had met him, and finding some likelihood of suspition in him, hath carried him to the King her Father. These meditations possest her mind so long & wrought such terror in her fancies, that she fared like one that had been possest with the truth that it was so.

Thus did they both continue the most part of the day, she seeking him, and he oppress with care, not remembring that it was time to return home; yet both of them directing their Steps a contrary way, that they met not: but wandred one from the other; at last he remembred where he was, how long he had been absent, and what care she would take for his absence, which caused him with as much speed to hast back, as with earnestness he had wandred up and down, which before he could attain it grew towards night.

Pisor likewise marvelling at his long stay, and her sudden departure, fearing some ill might betide him, and some extraordinary care oppress her; left the Cottage to find him, and if he could meet her, to direct her to the place where he left him.

When Persicles found them both absent, he marvelled thereat, enquiring of the old woman when they departed, who told him, that Constantia went out first, and he after her: which made him think that she missing him so long, might go seek him, and Pisor followed her, thinking to direct her, least she should wander astray (as she might well do) in those unfrequented places. But when he had a long time continued in those dumps, & saw neither of them returned, he began to enter into many mis-doubts

such

such as proceed from the unquiet motions of distempered Cogitations, being fearful to depart from thence again, lest he might so miss them.

Pisor being entred the wood, came to the place where he had left Persicles, but could neither find him there, nor Constantia, which made him wander up & down so long, that he was weary. At last he came to a shady place, and laying himself down to rest, he cast up his eyes, and espyed most beautiful fruit upon a tree hanging right over his head, the sight thereof pleased him so well, that plucking some of the same, he found the taste pleasant, which caused him to eat many of them: which made him presently fall into a deadly sleep. The name of the Fruit is called Pylos: the nature whereof is, to procure those that taste it, first to sleep for the space of four and twenty hours, and after to become frantick for the space of three months, which hindred Pisor from returning.

When Persicles had staied so long, expecting their coming, until it began to be dark: he again went out, telling the shepherd that he was going to seek them: cruel fortune directing his steps unto the place where Pisor lay sleeping: Whom when he beheld but neither by calling or any other means could awaken him: a deadly fear possessed his fancy, that some furious beast had slain him, and either devoured Constantia, or perused her, flying from him: which caused him like a mad man to draw forth Pisor's Sword, running up and down to seek that which was not there to be found.

Constantia by this time was wandred so far in search for Persicles: that she could by no means tell which way to go back again, but was constrained all that night to wander up and down with hope to have returned: But contrary to her thoughts, went another way, her fear and care causing her to make the more speed, that being weary with travel, coming to the out-side of the Wood, she sat down upon a bank, and after she had bewailed her miserable estate, and wearied her senses with sorrow; as she had her body with travel, fell asleep.

Now it fell out that Helion a day before had taken his leave of the Emperor of Persia, to travel into Arabia; and that night lay at Seliaes Fathers, causing her to be attyred in Rich Ornaments

naments that morning carried her into Arabia, intending there to make her his Bride, and by misfortune passed by the place where Constantia lay fast asleep: Some of his followers soon espyed her, and shewed her to Helion: Selia likewise seeing her, presently told Helion that her apparel was either the same which Constantiaes Gentlewoman took from her in the Persian Court, or so like it, she could not tell one from the other. Helion rose to her and awaked her, by his former disposition, and by her countenance, which was still in his remembrance, he perfectly knew her, and she at the first sight knew him, which amazed her senses with deadly fear: To whom he said: My dear Constantia, what hath caused you thus discourteously to reject my love? and leave the Persian Court to endure this hard fortune, so much disagreeing to your Estate, yet at length I beseech you to accept of my love, and go with me into Arabia.

Leave off your dissembling speeches (quoth Constantia) and let me alone, for I had rather all my life lie on this cold earth, than live at ease with you. With that she would have left him, but he commanded his Servants by force to take her into the Coach, and to go along with him into Arabia, not letting any know what she was but Selia.

When Constantia saw that of force she must needs go, she uttered such plaints, and made such sorrowful exclamations, that those that guarded her thought she would have fallen mad, and though they neither knew her nor her cause of sorrow: yet in their hearts they pitied her.

Whom we will leave fully possest with the uttermost extremity of anguish, onwards towards Arabia, the place she most of all hated, to speak of Perides who in a mad fury having ran up and down a long time in the wood, again returned to the shepherds house, to see if Constantia were not yet come, but there he found only the shepherd and his Wife in great care, waiting his return, who espying the Sword in his hand, and his face and hands in many places bloody, which was with the scratches he had received in the dark Wood; were ready to flie from him for fear, but he mildly demanded if Constantia were come back, who told him they saw her not: Alas (quoth he) my Lady, I fear she is devoured by some merciless Beast, for I found

Pisor

Pisor lying dead in the Wood, which affrighted me with such fear of her mishap, that I know not what to do, nor which way to go in her search.

My Lord (said the Shepherd) I can assure you there doth no Wild-beast haunt this Wood, for then could not my Flocks feed in quiet, of which I have not lost one Lamb by any casualty; but rather I think my Lady missing you all the day, is gone so far into the wood, that she cannot return, nor you find her, whom I do not doubt but to find in the morning; neither is he dead, but I believe hath tasted some of our unlucky Fruit called Pyles, that hath cast him into a dead sleep, and after that he will be Frantick for a space.

Persicles was much comforted with the Shepherds speeches, yet notwithstanding left him, and all that night wandred up and down the Wood to find her, but he spent his labour in vain, neither that night, nor the next day finding her, which drave him so far beyond the compass of Natural continency, that if he had remained long in that perplexity, it would have cut off his life. When he saw himself void of all hopes, without means how to find her, and assurance that she was not within the Wood, he sat himself down upon the earth, uttering these laments. How fortunate had I been, had I never set foot on Persian soil? then had I been still King of Assyria; and Constantia at quiet in her Fathers Court, whereas now, both I, but especially her self, is fallen into extream misery: Had it only fallen to my share, to have endured a thousand more mis-fortunes, I could with patience have endured them, onely this tormenteth me, that my mis-fortune hath brought her from weal, to woe, from quiet, to discontent, from pleasure to pain, from happiness, to misery, and from life to death. I cannot tell how to prevent these evils: to sit here and utter sad words availeth me not: to bewail her estate helpeth me not, nor to destroy my self will benefit her: Should I sit here for ever, I should never find her, and to seek her out of this place, is to spend my labour without hope of any comfort, for I fear she is dead, and then may I sooner meet her Ghost in this place then her body in another: well, since neither comfort nor counsel is left to further my hopes, I will for ever dwell in this unfortunate place, and fill the same with my laments,

ments, neither shall my body rest in bed, nor my stomach taste of other food then wild Fruit, until I find my Love, or know the place of her abode.

Thus he lived in those Woods many days and years, making every Tree a Monument of Constantias unfortunate losse, though he was often perswaded by Pisor, who afterwards travelled most part of those Countries in search of her, but could never hear of her: The Emperor her Father also had given over all care, as supposing her to be dead, greatly lamenting the misfortunes of Perficles, and marvelling at his absence, believing that he was murthered, according to the accusations made by Oretus, against Parenus and Thrureus, whom we will leave for a while, to speak of the mis-fortunes that befel Constantia.

CHAP. VIII.

How *Selia* was married to *Helion*, and of the miseries *Constantia* endured by her jealousie: How *Constantia* was delivered of a goodly Boy, whose life was preserved by the policy of *Palia*, and how *Selia* vexed thereat.

HElion was no sooner come to Arabia, but he was informed of his Fathers death, which for a time he lamented of common use, not of pitty or affection; in the mean time causing Constantia to be kept in an old Monastery, under the Government of an ancient Lady, who lived not onely by the gifts that the King bestowed upon her for many bad actions, but also of many Gentlemen that haunted the company of the Kings Concubines by stealth. In this very place did he leave Constantia, neither her Keeper nor any other knowing what she was, who by this time was resolved to endure all adversities; many dates giving her self to quiet: Helion by reason of his dissembling mourning he came not at her.

But ỳ time being come, that he was Crowned King he married Selia, causing Constantia as one of her Hand-maids to attend her, which he did out of a malious intent only to vex her; but she was well content to do any thing to be rid of his hateful love, whom she abhorred from the very depth of her soul. But when

when he saw she endured the same with such patience, he again caused her to be kept closely in the Monastery, giving order ỹ none but Palia should come at her.

Thus did she continue until she began to feel her self with Child by Persicles, which drave her to the uttermost exigent of care, how to preserve the Infants life: sometimes thinking to make her estate known to Palia: but having sufficient tryal of her wicked disposition durst not trust her, least she should reveal the same to the King.

Selia also at that time was great with Child by Helion, both Conceiving at one instant, one in the Persian Court, the other in the Shepherds Cottage. Selia made Helion acquainted therewith, desiring that she might be delivered in some private place, that the Ladies of the Court might not know thereof, for it would be to her a great scandal.

Helion well knowing the nature of the people, and in what detestable sort they held Adultery in their Queen, thought no place so fit as the Monastery where Constantia was, whether she was soon conveyed: report being given out by the Kings command, that she was for the preservation of her health departed into the Country.

The Queen being come into the Monastery, asked for Constantia, who was presently brought before her, whom Selia now began to hate mortally, being jealous of her, supposing that her Husband still loved her, whom she used so disdainfully, upbraiding her with many undecent speeches, which she took most patiently, with brinish tears lamenting her mis-fortunes: and so proudly did she behave her self to all that attended on her, ỹ they began to mislike her.

Palia seeing the pride of the Queen, and in what disdainful sort she used her, accusing her to be privy to the Kings secret love to Constantia, and using her so basely, and with such evil terms began to hate her, which Constantia perceived by some doubtful words she gave out against her: whereupon finding a fit opportunity, when she was vexed with her unkindness, she came to Palia, and said: I perceive the Queen useth you unkindly, regarding to use none well, though they gave her no cause at all: she likewise misuseth me, ỹ never in my life offended her, but

have been the greatest cause of her good, I would gladly intreat your aid, and withal reveal many things unto you, that you yet knew not, if I were assured of your secresie, which I am the more fearful to reveal, because they are matters of great importance, but notwithstanding, if you will vouchsafe your assistance to pity my most miserable estate, you would do a deed of everlasting merit.

Palia hearing her speeches, said, if I may likewise without fear make my mind known unto you, be you assured that I do so mortally hate her, that rewards my good services with such disdain, that I will not leave any thing unattempted to devise torment her; therefore if an Oath may assure you of my secresie, having no other means at this instant to give you proof thereof, I vow by all the Gods, ỳ I never intend for to reveal what you disclose to me, but will most faithfully endeavour to pleasure you to my utmost power. Then know (quoth Constantia) ỳ I am Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, sometimes brought up in this Court, and your Queen but the Daughter of a Country Swain in Persia, that being exalted to Dignity though basely born, behaveth her self thus proudly; I fearing my Father would have married me to Helion against my will, having betrothed my self to ỳ King of Assyria, with whom I stole from ỳ Court in this apparel of Seliaes, that is now your Queen, much enquiry was made for me, but they could never find me, for I lived with my Lord in this disguise in a Shepherds house, until one day I missing him, strayed so far from the house ỳ I could not return, so by mis-fortune was found by Helion, and thus I am now brought into this Country, either to my death, or a worser end; I am also big with Child, and within short space look to be delivered, my earnest desire is, that you would use some means to preserve my Babe from death, which no doubt it is likely to endure by her malice and his cruelty.

Palia hearing her speeches, did comfort her with many chearful words, thereby to work some revenge against the Queen, pitying the distress of Constantia, of whose vertues she had before some knowledge: With this promise did Constantia somewhat comfort her self, hoping that in the end she should escape from that bondage, being daily cherished by old Palia, who behaved her

her self towards Selia with such duty and obedience, that notwithstanding her often upbraidings, she still kept her self in most place of credit about her.

Now the time was come that the Queen was delivered of a goodly Boy, and Constantia the next night of another, none being privy thereto but Palia, who handled the matter with such cunning, that she conveyed Constantiaes child to Selia, & hers to Constantia, making her acquainted with her intent therein: and the next night told Helion that the Damosel in her custody was delivered of a Boy. Helion hearing that, willed her to keep the same secret upon pain of death, and not to reveal it to the Queen, vowing ere many days to destroy it, giving order to have his own Son named Petus: and coming to his Queen, told her, it were best to be nursed in the Country, who was contented to be ruled by him. Then calling Palia to him, he told her y she must provide a Nurse for his Son, who having before completted what she intended, said she knew a kinswoman of hers, y was lately brought to bed some twenty miles off, to whom she would convey the Infant.

Helion was glad of her promise, appointing her all things necessary for her departure the next morning. Late in the night when Palia was sure none could see her, she went to Constantia, and told her what she intended, withal, asking her counsel, what she should do?

Ay me, said she, I know not in this extremity what to resolve upon, fearing never to see my Son again; and if thou goest I lose my greatest comfort. Then taking y Child in her arms, and bestowing many dear kisses thereon she said, Palia, I pray thee let me know what thou intendest to do with it. Lady (quoth she) after I am departed this Court, I will not cease travelling till I arrive in Assyria, where I do not doubt but to find Persicles, unto whom I will declare your mis-fortunes. But if I find him not there, I will travel into Persia, to the place where you left him, where I shall assuredly find him, so y he knowing your estate, may seek to release you. And wilt thou do this for me (said Constantia) that am never likely to make thee amends? I will (quoth Palia) and with such faithfulness execute my charge, as shall procure you comfort.

Many speeches past between them before they parted, but yet in ꝑ end she was constrained to leave her almost dead with grief, but afterwards somewhat comforted with the good hopes she had of her faithful dealing: of two evils thinking it ꝑ best to commit the Babe to her curtesie, who by all likelihood intended well thereto. Early the next morning she departed, having no body in her company, with all the haste she could, travelling towards Assyria.

Helion now began to meditate on Constantines mis-fortune, and who should be the Father of the Child; and whereas before he determined to shut her up in a Cloyster until she would yield to his desire, he now resolved to revenge the disdain she had shewed him for refusing his love: And finding occasion when none could interrupt his speeches, being alone with her, he said unto her in this manner.

Disdainful and unworthy Lady, did you esteem so basely of my love, in my contempt to chuse some base born Peasant, to possess that which I so long sought with devoted affection, and refusing my honourable proffer, to chuse rather to become anothers Harlot? Who would ever have thought that so comely a Person, shadowed with so fair a pretext, had inwardly nourished such ignoble affections? Do not you think that the Emperour your Father will rejoyce to hear, that his fair Daughter (which may well be termed incontinency) hath so vilely stained her Princely Blood, and defamed her Royal stock, with so infamous a fact, or will rather dye with grief.

Therefore to prevent so great a mischief as will come by his death, I will be the man to keep this action from his knowledge and in his behalf work such punishment, as shall be agreeable unto so great an offence: yet let me know the cause of thy contempt against me, and who is the Father of thy Bastard, which if thou refuse to do by gentle means, I will by force compel thee thereunto.

Constantia with patience heard out his speeches, and then did make him this answer: Helion, I can well bear your opprobrious words, neither do I care how scandalous they are; for the Father of my Infant is as good as thy self, and one that I love far more than thy self, who censureth me according to ꝑ quality

of

of his own disposition: The reason why I left my Fathers Court was to avoid your importunate suit, which was very unpleasing to me, in respect of the honourable love I imbraced; therefore beware that you abuse not me: for though the Emperour my Father will not revenge my wrongs, yet there is a King as mighty as he, claimeth my protection, and will not suffer me to be wronged.

What, is a King the Father of that Bastard, said he? No thou shalt never perswade me to that: for it looketh more like a Fool, than a King.

Yea, said she, and yet a King as wise as thy self, and that ere long thou shalt soon know; for the Father thereof is private to all thy actions, although thou thinkest me safely kept: and if thou dost murther it I care not, for thy self will be the first that will repent the deed. And for me use me well, for the Father of this Infant loveth thee well, & yet thou wilt be thy own destruction in seeking his death.

Helion understood not the meaning, marvelling who it should be she meant, that he said: I think thou art mad, or counterfeitest some deceit by the ambiguity of thy speeches; for how can ỳ Father of that but love me? or what cause have I to repent me of any thing I should do to it, which thy rather shall suffer my wrath because of thy derisions: therefore resolve me, or be assured of my everlasting hatred.

I neither (quoth she) regard thee nor thy hate, utterly denying to fulfil thy request in any respect; yet if thou hadest not demanded it I should peradventure have told thee: Do ỳ worst you can, I care not, for misery it self hath made me resolve to endure the greatest extremity; and know, that I do the more dislike the Babe because it is so like thee, that hast not ỳ least spark of honour or honesty. Ask me no more questions, for I will not answer thee, esteeming my self more fortunate in thy hatred then in thy love, for the one is nothing but the distempered motion of a cowardly disposition: and the other the unconstant falshood of a shallow wit.

Helion was much vexed to see how lightly she esteemed him, being ready to tear his hair, he went raging and swearing from her, meditating which way how to work his revenge. Selia noting

ving his distemper by his pale countenance, asked him what had disquieted him? to whom he gave no answer at all, casting a fearful look towards her, which she took in such suspitious sort, that she presently supposed he did it in scorn of her, and being puffed up with jealousie, could not refrain from tears, and at last she uttered these speeches.

My Lord, I now perceive the love you protested to bear to me is altered, and I like a poor cast away am like to live in misery, O that I had lived still in my contented estate, then should I not have been subject to these mis-fortunes: Constantia whom you told me you loved not, is it she hath taken away your affections, and on her you dote, despising me, wherein you shew the unconstancy of your disposition; besides, she hath made known what I was, which makes me scorned by the Ladies of the Court, so that the misery I am like to endure is intollerable.

Do not, said he, disquiet your self with the least suspicion of any such alteration in me, for I vow to have none but your self, the cause of my vexation is, how to revenge my self on her that even now hath abused me with opprobrious terms, she is brought to bed of a Bastard, begotten of a base born Peasant, which shall not live long to vex me; I wish I had left her in Persia to have been devoured by wild Beasts, rather then by pitying her, to work my self this disquiet. Should I send word to her Father the Emperor, he would compel me to marry her, or else he would make war against me: Or if I should seek her death, it would by some means or other come to his ear, that then he would seek revenge against me, so that I know not what way to be rid of her.

The Queen hearing him say she had a Bastard, presently began to suspect it to be his, and would then have uttered it, but fear and premeditated hope of revenge against Constantia, stopped her, thinking first to learn the truth, before she would offend him; perceiving his inconstant disposition to be such, that the least thing altered his love, deferring her self till her month was ended, by which means Constantia rested void of disturbance.

The flame of jealousie burned so in Selines Breast, that as soon as she had forsaken the Monastery, and had a while with great kind-

kindness, behaved her self to all the Lords and Ladies in most estimation, thereby to insinuate into their good opinion, she came to Constantia, fawning upon her with an affable countenance, using many courteous speeches towards her, with intent to find out the truth of her suspicion.

Helion fearing that she was in the Monastery, fearing y she would have done some violence to Constantia, followed her: Selia seeing him there, was half astonished, thinking that he had not known thereof, and now suspected of a truth that he came to visit Constantia of love, and not to seek her, again burst forth into tears, whereupon he took occasion to say thus: Selia, I perceive suspicion is the cause of your disquiet, therefore to shew what little cause you have to use me so, do but say what I shall do to this dishonourable Lady, and it shall be performed. Constantia then began to fear some mischief was near her, which might easily have been seen by her often changing of her countenance, whereupon she made this reply: Helion, if thy Queen knew how much I disdain thee, such motions of disquiet would not trouble her, for I contemn thy dispositions, which are ready to alter with every blast of wind: or Selia, dost thou think my heart will stoop to his base lust, or become Concubine to so degenerate a wretch as thy Husband is, no, I will rather see my body torn in peices, and suffer the cruellest misery in the world; He threatneth me with terrible speeches, but his Cowards heart is not of courage to execute his detested will; Therefore, thou that art of a heady disposition, comest to incourage him to do mischief; do the worst you can both, for I fear you not, but would gladly be rid out of this miserable life: And tid thou shalt (said Selia) notwithstanding thy dissimulation, thinking with disdainful speeches to colour thy wickedness. I am indeed come to be revenged on thee, that crossest my intent, and first shall that Bastard feel the smart of my wrath. Then snatching the Child out of the Cradle where it lay, she held it up as ready to deprive it of life till Helion withheld her. Then Constantia said: May let her murther it, and she will be the first that will repent it: but first view it well, and see if it resembles not the Father that standeth by: I assure thee it is his, and that thou shalt soon know. Out upon thee (said he) I defie thee: with that

she viewed it well, & perceiued that it resembled him perfectly, whereupon she cast the Child upon the ground, saying: Did you bring me hither to do me this intollerable wrong? Shall I suffer my self to be thus used, and live to endure perpetual discontent? the Peers of this Land shall understand the wrongs I sustain? & if none else, my own hands shall work revenge; Constantia then said; Selia take up the Infant and cherish it, for it is thy own, my Child by this time is conveyed far enough from thy power by Palia: who pitying my distress, and scorning to be subject to thy base pride, hath changed one for the other, leaving yours with me, carrying mine unto the King of Assyria who is the Father thereof, who I doubt not will soon revenge the wrong that is done to me, neither do thou jealously suspect me for that degenerate King thy Husband, for she that is Daughter to the Emperor of Persia scorneth to be thy Corrival: if I had dealt unfaithfully with him, then he might worthily have inflicted this punishment upon me, but his own conscience knows, I always refused to love him, my love being before vowed to the King of Assyria.

Both of them were amazed at her speeches, the Queen in all haste taking up her Son that lay sprawling at her feet almost dead; and Helion after a long study, said, Constantia, I perceive thou knowest not how unable the King of Assyria is to redeem thee from hence; being lately dispossest of his Crown by the King of Armenia, and by the Treason of his own Subjects, being himself driven to live in obscurity; therefore this will I do in satisfaction of my mind against thee; thou shalt never depart from hence, but in this Chamber end thy life, unless the valiantest Knight in world redeem thee, for such a guard will I put over thee, as shall be overcome by none.

Constantia was no whit grieved to hear the doom of her imprisonment, but only the suspect she had of his words of Periocles, overcame her heart in such fear, that she fell down in a deadly Trance; those that were about her having much ado to recover her; whereupon they left her: Helion giving command that most diligent search should be made for Palia through the whole Country of Arabia.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

How *Helion* built an Enchanted Tower to put *Constantia* therein; and how he was imprisoned therein himself in great misery by the Enchantress *Ila*.

IN few daies after, Helion purposing to effect that which he vow'd (being resolv'd to work the most cruellest revenge ỹ might be on the Lady Constantia) called all the cunningest workmen of his Land before him, asking their advice about building of a Castle of invincible strength, which they promised to perform: and thus they began to work: First situating the same upon a Rocky Hill of great largeness, ỹ was encompassed with a deep Lake, ỹ encompassing the circuit of ỹ ground with a Wall framed of the hardest Marble, of such smoothness without, and height, that it was not to be ascended: over ỹ Lake was framed a bridge of exceeding beauty, placing at ỹ entrance two Fortifications, between them setting a Gate of Brass, curiously wrought with carved Images of Lyons, being the Arms of Arabia: on the midst they placed a draw-bridge, drawn upon such devises, that one man was able to draw up the same with speed: at ỹ further end of ỹ bridge was builded a most curious wrought Gate-house, garnished with stones of strange and sundry colours, at ỹ entrance thereto was another Gate of Brass, far exceeding the first: in the midst above the top thereof, was placed the form of six Golden Lyons of great bigness: within this Porch was a large Court, encompassed round with Turrets, Walls, and Fortifications, within the compass whereof an Army of Souldiers might lie encamped.

The next entrance was three Gates of Brass, carved like ỹ other two over which they built a Tower of great beauty, and workmanship, framed of Adamant, cut out and carved into the forms of several Beasts, Trees, Herb, and Fowls, the beauty whereof, would have held the beholder in admiration: on the Top was built four Pinacles on a Quadrant, whose glittering vanes & carved work shin'd against the Sun, as if the same had

been framed of beaten Gold; within the Tower was a Court encompassed round about with most rich and stately building, having several doors into every building, of invincible strength, framed all of one proportion, guilded over with Gold; the Windows of an exceeding largeness and beauty, supported by two Lyons of carved Alablaster, guilded over with Gold; on the top next to the Eves, two Cherubims standing in form of Angels of carved Gold, supporting the Picture of a beautiful Lady; the Windows discovering the richness of the Chambers within: In the midst of this Court was framed a clear Fountain, with divers streams of water springing from the same, curiously carved and guilded over with Gold, the brightness glittering with such reflection of the Sun beams round about, that at the first entrance it would have dazelled the beholders eyes: At the further end of this Court was a Hall of exceeding largeness, supported within with Pillars of great, beset with stones of sundry colours; the skreen being framed of the most curious work of carved Wood; the Rook of stone, whereon were coloured out the colours of all kind of fruits; the Walls hung with rich hangings of Arras, containing the History of the Wars of Troy: In the midst of this Hall was fastned two Pillars, whereunto were chained two Lyons of huge bigness and great strength, denying all further entrance; the further end of the Hall was without any Wall at all, supported by Pillars of the same great, lying open in a Garden of great largeness, which at the first entrance into the Hall was gloriously discerned, in which were made Walks, Arbors, borders of Flowers, and the form of all things cut out in Herbs, Flowers to delight the eye, please the smell, of several forms, and all things so curiously wrought, as was strange to behold: In the midst of this Garden stood a Banquetting house of round proportion, the foundation supported by four Lyons of carved blew stone, called Ayres; the Windows round about encompassed the same, through which the Light passed clearly without impediment; the Pillars, Calsments, and other proportions of such excellent workmanship, that it seemed to be altogether framed of Christal: On the top of this House stood the form of an Angel framed of beaten Gold pointing with his Finger towards the other Lodgings, of very rich building,

building, at the farther end of the Garden, the description thereof is hereafter set down.

Helion having finished this work, called unto him one Penthrasus an antient Professor of Necromancy, and with him alone went into the Palace, shewing him the same, and why he had built it, desiring his counsel and aid to the performance of his will.

Penthrasus being desirous to practise his Art, which before he durst not do (for by the Laws of the Land the same was punished with death) promised by his Art to make the same so invincible, that it should never be overcome by strength or policy; adviſing the King to bring Constantia thither, and two Damosels to attend her, and attyre her in rich Ornaments. When the King had performed this, and delivered her to Panthrasus, making a condition with him, that none but himself should be suffered to have entrance, he departed, leading Constantia to be entertained by Penthrasus, who led her into the Castle, appointing her Damosels where they should have all things necessary, telling her it would be many years before she could be released: After he had placed her there, he began to cast about how to fortifie the same; and by his Art, he found that there lived in the Desart of Arabia two mighty Gyants, of huge proportion, and of great strength, whom he found out, casting such bewitched charms upon them, that they presently followed him to the Castle, (which he afterwards named Penthrasus's Palace) by his charms and spells binding them to keep the first entrance of the Bridge, and by his Sorceries guarding every entrance in such strong sort as it was impossible to be overcome. Having performed every thing according to his mind, he brought thither his wife named Ila, determining to spend the rest of his life there; but within few years he fell sick, and by his art found the date of his life to be near: Whereupon he went to the Oracle of the Hesperian Nymphs in the Desart, which he was enjoyned unto by a Vision he saw in his sleep, to know what he should do concerning those charms which he had set upon the Castle, whose answer was this.

Penthrasus, Because by thy Art thou hast not attempted any wicked action, and to disclose the Destinies; many a Knight of

sundry strange Countries shall hear of the beauty of *Constantia*, and shall come to try their adventures to set her at liberty; but none shall perform it: neither shall it be revealed that she is the Daughter of the Emperor of *Persia*, until she be released by the Valour of her own Son, and the manner and means how he is as yet hidden: and unrevealed, until which time *Ila* will live, and by our directions govern the Castle until the Enchantments be ended. He receiving this answer, he returned home, and within few days died.

Thus was Constantia enclosed, enjoying all the delights her heart could desire; but nothing could comfort her but remembrance of her Lord Persicles, for whose absence she lived in continual grief.

Helion kept that which he had done concerning Constantia from the knowledge of Selia, determining never to see her again, within short time after, such discord began between he & she, that the whole Court was in an uproar, & he found such disquiet with her that then he began to hate her, abandon her company and to dote on the remembrance of Constantia, repenting him of the evil he had done her, and resolved again to set her at liberty, or else to obtain of Penthasilus to live for ever in the Castle, and by extraordinary means to obtain her love; & upon a time he rod thither determining to see her, where when he came he found the Gate at the entrance of the Bridge fast shut, and nothing but a horn hanging thereat fastned to a Chain, which he winded and presently one of the Gyants came to the door, with whose sight he stood affrighted, till he asked him what he would have? I would, said he, speak with Penthasilus. The Gyant bid him come in, and shutting fast the entrance, brought him before Ila, who presently knowing him, said, I understand y cause of your coming, which thou shalt never obtain, for which disloyal thought, and other ignoble deeds, thou shalt never depart from hence, until the Lady which thou didst cause to be enclosed here be set at liberty: with that, not suffering him to answer, she caused him to be bound, and carried into a dark Dungeon, where he was hardly dieted, and worse threatned.

Ila having him in her custody, knew that none else was privy to Constantias being there, caused these Verses to be written

in

in Letters of Gold, and did hang them over the outermost Gate, and by the same Constantiaes Picture, whereon she cast such a Spell, that all that beheld it were in love with her. The Verses were these:

Within this Castle is inclos'd
the Daughter of a King,
Whose beauty caus'd a Traitors fall,
that did her from her Country bring.
Here must she bide until a Knight
by force doth set her free,
And by his valour end the date
of crooked destiny.
The world shall fame him for that deed,
and great shall be his Fame;
Her lasting love he shall enjoy,
that rids her out of pain.

When she had written these Verses, and placed them under the Picture, she withdrew her self into the Castle, staying the coming of the next Knight for the adventure.

CHAP. X.

How *Palia* seeking for food was devoured by a Lyon: and how the Infant was found by a Lady, who cherished him, & afterwards named him *Montelion*.

LEt us now return to speak of Palia, & what happened to the Infant. After she had travelled out of Arabia, resolving faithfully to do what she had undertaken, & had attained to Assyria, she soon understood the news of the Armenians Victory, whereby she was assured it would be in vain to seek Persicles there; therefore she returned towards Persia, intending to follow Constantiaes directions to find him: but being wearied with long travelling, she sat her self down upon a Mountain, standing in a vast desolate place, on the top whereof grew a tuft of Trees, that shadowed her from the heat of the Sun, where she had not long rested, but the boy fell

fast

fast asleep, and she being very hungry, began to seek for Fruit, (being no other food there to be had) leaving him upon ỳ mountain: But wandring into a thicket, was by misfortune devoured by a Lyon, and the poor Infant left ready to be destroyed, but the Destinies that had allotted him to better fortune, thus preserved him.

Not far off there dwelt an Ancient Knight, named Cothanes who with his Lady the same day had been hunting, & now she being weary of the sport, with two servants in her company, hapned to alight at the very place where the Babe lay, who by that time was awaked, and missing his Nurse began to cry.

The Lady hearing the noise, searched among the Trees, and presently found the Child, which she took in her arms, commanding one of her Servants to take up a bundle of Cloaths that lay by the same, and to wind his Horn: that Cothanes hearing it might come unto them: who according to her desire came, asking her what was the matter? You have, said she, all this day hunted after Wild beasts, and lost your labour, but I have found a rich prize, yet by what mis-fortune left in this place, I know not, with that they both viewed the Child, well noting his exceeding beauty and sweet countenance, with great joy carrying it home, naming it Montelion, finding in the Fardal many rich Jewels, and a fair imbroidered Scarf, whereby they knew him to be of no mean birth, Educating him carefully, and after he was come to knowledge, teaching him many commendable and vertuous qualities: When he came to fourteen years of age, Cothanes taught him how to ride, and manage a Horse, often taking him forth a hunting with him, delighting much in his forwardness, wherein he was so apt, that he could not offer to teach him any thing, but he soon grew to be as perfect as himself. Whom we will leave to be Educated by Cothanes, and return to speak of Perticles, and what befel to him after the loss of Constantia.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How *Piſor* being recovered, perſwaded *Perſicles* to crave aid of the Emperor of Perſia againſt his enemies, and how he obtained the ſame, and carried a mighty Hoſt into Aſſyria, which was there overthrown.

When Perſicles had in his heavineſs and ſorrow wandred up and down theſe woods the ſpace of three months, & Piſor again coming to his remembrance upon a time they both met, Piſor ſaluting him with great reverence. Perſicles ſeeing he was again come to his right ſenſes, asked him what became of Conſtantia? My Lord, ſaid he, I found her in the Shepherds houſe, and told her you would preſently return; but when ſhe ſaw you ſtay ſo long, unawares to me, ſhe went out of the Cottage to ſeek you, and I ſoon miſſing her, thought to overtake her, and direct her to the place where I left you, but by mis-fortune taſted of that Ominous fruit. Then ſaid he, ſhe is aſſuredly devoured by Wild Beaſts, and I ſhall never ſee her again, my mis-fortunes exceed the bounds of common miſeries: would I had ended my life when I was firſt born, then would not both Aſſyria and Perſia have ſuch cauſe of diſcontent.

My Lord (quoth Piſor) I cannot be perſwaded that ſhe is dead; but by ſome mis-fortune Wandred out of knowledge, or carried hence by ſome unexpected means; therefore I beſeech you bear her loſs with patience, and in the end, I doubt not, but you will hear of her ſafety. Thou giveſt me words full of comfort (ſaid he) but thou haſt no ground for them, nor can I tell how by them to add any hope to my wretcheſs paſſions, for that ſhe is loſt I am ſure, or that I ſhall ever ſee her again, I think it is impoſſible, being driven to ſo hard an exigent of extremity, that I neither know what to do, nor whoſe aid to implore, thou ſeeſt another hath ſhut me out of my Kingdom, & in my abſence won my ſubjects hearts from me. The Emperor of Perſia hearing of ꝑ wrong I have done him, will be my enemy, & then there is no place of refuge left for me, but in this place, beſt befitting my miſery. Yet my Lord (quoth Piſor) if I may be ſo bold as to

counſel

counsel you, let us go to the Persian Court, I as I am, and you in that disguise, for none but your Sister being privy to your escape with Constantia, you may safely without fear go thither, both to confer with Piera, and to crave the Persians assistance, to establish you in your Kingdom.

Persicles was unwilling to leave those Woods, where he was resolved to dwell for ever, but finding no hope thereby to recover her, and also being perswaded by Pisor, he condescended to go with him. When they approached neer the Court, Pisor rode on before, and entring the same, he soon found Piera, declaring to her, the mis-fortunes that was fallen to Persicles and Constantia, and that he was without the Court, staying until he returned, to know whether with safety he might come to speak with her or no. Piera did then presently send for him by Pisor, who brought him into the Court, where he was welcomed by her with great joy; with whom he continued some time in private conference: She counselled him to discover himself to the Emperor of Persia and to crave his aid against the Armenians, who would readily assist them, whereof she told him, he needed not to doubt; for that he had always been his friend, and knew not of his escape with the Princess, which none but her self and Dela were privy to. *except God I. H. M*

Whilst they continued in this conference, Deloratus came in, and seeing one in such habit with his Wife, did marvel who it should be; Piera espying him, left her Brother, and went to her Husband, telling him who it was; wherewith he ran to Persicles, and embraced him in his arms, now perfectly remembring him, although grief had much altered him. After many speeches past, Deloratus, he, and Piera went to the Emperor of Persia, who knowing him, welcomed him with exceeding kindness. Persicles then unfolded his mis-fortunes, & desired his assistance to revenge the wrongs the Armenians had done him, whereupon the Emperor gave authority to Deloratus to muster up Souldiers, and make provision for a speedy March.

This news was soon rumoured in the Court and many thousand Knights prepared to aid Persicles, whom they honoured for his valor and courtesie, purposing to spend their lives in his defence, that of a sudden one part of the Country was up in Arms,

and

and were conducted into Assyria by Deloratus, Persicles, Osimus, Pisor, and other Knights of great valour; of whose Deeds in Chivalry we will hereafter speak.

Persicles had such ill success, that after he had continued a long time in Assyria, yet he so little prevailed, that he was compelled to fly back into Persia to renew his forces. These cruel Wars continued many years, the King of Armenia defending himself, and keeping full possession of his Crown, notwithstanding the Persian forces.

Deloratus perceiving that the long continuance of these wars had wasted a great number of Souldiers, and still the King was as far from possession of his right, as at the first beginning, determined to give over, and therefore assembled together the chiefest Rulers of the Host, to know their opinion, what further to resolve on, who with a general consent perswaded him once again to renew his Forces, and if they did not prevail, never more to give the Onset.

CHAP. XII.

How *Persicles* Army was renewed, and how *Montelion* being denied by his supposed Father, stole to the Camp, where he preserved the Kings life; and how *Cothanes* knew him, and discovered his birth; and how he received Knight-hood at the Kings hand.

PErsicles seeing Deloratus ready to shrink from him, being himself wearied with that tedious War, went with full resolution either to end his life, or ever after to abandon the company of all men, and end his days in solitariness, Deloratus therefore sent Messengers into *Persia* to muster up new Forces, who in short time returned answer, ỹ the *Persian* Camp was full fourscore thousand strong: amongst the rest it fortuned Cothanes (being in his youth a man of great Valour, and now being grown in years, and of exceeding good experience) determined not to give his mind to sloath, being much grieved to hear, what a number of his Countrey-men were daily slain; and therefore told his Lady what he intended, but she

with tears, and many entreaties diſſwaded him, but all could not prevail, his heart was ſo fully ſet thereon.

Montelion now being grown to mans eſtate, hearing thereof, intreated Cothanes (whom he eſteemed to be his Father, and ſo called him) that he might go with him; but he would by no means conſent thereunto, the rather becauſe his Lady moſt earneſtly entreated him, that if he did go, not to leave her comfortleſs, by taking Montelion with him; wherefore all his entreaties prevailed nothing, but of neceſſity he was enforced to ſtay.

Cothanes being departed, Montelion continued ſome days very penſive, being ſo much grieved in his thoughts to be left behind, that he refuſed his meat; and notwithſtanding the many kindneſſes his ſuppoſed Mother uſed to him, he thought all things troubleſome; which deſire ſo much prevailed with him, that furniſhing himſelf with good ſtore of money, one night conveyed his horſe forth, and when all thought he had been in his Chamber, he was departed.

By that time it was day, he approached near the City of Holocoſs, wherein he ſtayed ſome three days, until he had furniſhed himſelf with Armour, which he cauſed a workman to frame of exceeding good Lydian Steel: His Armor being interſet with the forms of divers Trees, & Beaſts, of pureſt gold, in his Shield bearing this device; A naked man amongſt a tuft of Trees: the which he cauſed to be made on purpoſe to be known, different from the reſt.

Having furniſhed himſelf in this ſort, he left the City, and journied towards the Perſian Camp in Aſſyria, where he was no ſooner come, but he beheld both the Battels joyned into a moſt terrible fight, and a great number of Souldiers on both ſides ſlain, lying covered and beſmeared with blood; ſome with their ſwords graſped faſt in their hands threatning, and others with a hideous noiſe breathing forth their laſt gaſps; and in the Camp he beheld ſome flying, others purſuing; ſome ſtanding faſt in cruel conflict, others with fierce terror ſlaying thoſe that were next them, ſome with hideous noiſe animating their fellow Souldiers, and others with fear crying, Retire, Retire. There he beheld both Perſians and Armenians intermingled, each ſlaughtering other; wherewith he ſtood a while amazed, having

having never before beheld such cruel conflicts. At last he beheld a most gallant man with his sword drawn, all covered with blood, hurling up and down amongst the Armenians, performing admirable deeds of Chivalry, till at last he was encompassed with such a multitude of his enemies, that it was impossible for him to escape, which sight stirred up in Montelion such sparks of courage, and desire to succour him, that his heart urging him to more forwardness then his Steed could perform, and yet his Steed with furious pace running as swift as might be, rushed in amongst the thickest of them. At first he pierced his Launce through the bodies of two that were opposite before him, and his horse with unstayed course overthrew others, treading them under his feet, then drawing his sword, whose sight dazled the beholders, till he darkned the same with their blood, destroying such as withstood his passage, till he approached the Persian Knight, who without his approach had there ended his life; but finding himself more at liberty by the assistance of this new-come Gallant, again redoubled his abated courage, and joyning themselves both together, they performed such deeds of Chivalry, as by their assistance, the thronged multitude of the Armenians was dispersed, every one hasting to get from them.

This Knight which Montelion had rescued, was Persicles, who seeing how valliantly this new-come Gallant had preserved his life, said; Noble Knight, thy Valour hath preserved me, for which I will not be ungrateful; and if thou art a friend to me, as thou hast already shown, second me, and I will once again try my fortune; with that Montelion held up his hand, to shew he gave consent. Persicles with all speed hasted into the foremost of the Battel, and Montelion followed after, making such way, that those that stood to resist him dyed; where being come, they found Deloratus, Osimus, Pisor, Cothanes, and many gallant Knights, in Combat, beset with odds; but that disadvantage was soon turned to advantage, by their approach, for there did Montelion perform such mighty deeds of Arms, as made both the Persian and Armenian Hosts admire who he was, and from whence he came.

Now the Persians began to gather new courage, and assault their enemies more fiercely than they had done since they

began. Palian the usurper of the Crown, seeing that; thinking to prevail as in times past he had done, called the chiefest Rulers to him, exhorting them to take courage to resist the Enemies; upon which, with undaunted Spirits, they followed the battel with great eagerness, that the Persian Commanders were forced to flye to their Regiments to encourage them to fight. In this time Montelion and Persicles kept together, making thousands of the Armenians to pay their lives for tribute unto their conquering swords. Whilst they continued the fight in the foremost of the battel, they suddenly heard a cry on the out-side; which when Montelion heard (not regarding to be counselled) he set spurs to his horse and rode thither, where he found Deloratus among a great throng of Armenians unhorsed, and fighting on foot being grievously wounded, and against such odds, that he was ready to faint, amongst whom he rushed with such fury, that he horsed him again, and sent a guard with him to his Tent; then turning again towards Persicles, he espyed Cothanes unhorsed, whom he knew by his Armor, and newly by force taken Prisoner, but before they could convey him from thence, he began so cruel a fight, that with the loss of many of their lives, he set him at liberty.

The Armenians seeing their fellows thus slaughtered, and the Enemy pursue them so closely, began to retire, and Palian well perceiving that he should lose that day; therefore calling to him two Knights, one named Altheſus, and the other Petron, who were the stoutest men in all his Army, he said unto them: Joyn with me, and let us once again expel these faint-hearted Cowards; with that, they three with a multitude of their chiefest Souldiers kept a great head together, and Fronted that Battel where the King himself fought. Palian knowing him, with a Launce ready couched ran at him, which lighted upon his Shield, and so burst in pieces, not once bruising the well tempered steel: Then Altheſus and the rest assailed him all at once, whom he resisted with such exceeding valour, continuing a sharp combat with them a long time; but at length the odds proving too great, he was driven only to defend their swift blows, that they made at him, and then he began to wish for the strange Knight that had before succoured him, expecting nothing but death.

By

By this time Montelion had rescued Cothanes, and again got him Horse and Arms, which done he left him, and even at the very time the King wished for him, he came; and espying three Knights assaulting him at once, he aimed his Swords point at Petron's breast who was next him, and running at him with all the force his horse could possibly make, thrust him quite through his body, and presently after aiming the same at Palian, he ran it at him, and had he not avoided his encounter, he had either slain or wounded him, but missing him, he made at him with his Sword with such puissant force, that in short space he gave him many wounds.

King Persicles having none but Althesus to resist, did combat with him bravely, who with the like valour resisted him: but in the end, the usurping King finding himself so overmatched, would have often escaped, which Montelion perceiving, gave him no respite to flye.

Now the fight was most terrible to behold, the Persians comforted by the only valour of Montelion, running upon their enemies with unresistable fury.

The Armenians seeing one of their chiefest Champions slain, and their General retire, were amazed, and rather ready to flye than to stand, which animated their foes with courage to pursue them as long as the day lasted. Montelion still pursued Palian; in whose rescue many of his Knights interfer themselves, and dyed by his Sword; and notwithstanding, though he withdrew himself, yet Montelion followed him so neer, that he often put him in danger of his life, until he was so far past in amongst their Troops, that he was compelled with his sword to make his way out, in whose retire many dyed.

The night drawing nigh, whilst the Armenians sounded a retreat, Montelion had time to consider what was best for him to do; and whether it were convenient to discover himself or no: at last determining to depart in secret, he espyed the King hard by him, who of purpose had watched him, doubting that which he intended, who came unto him, and said:

Sir Knight, the kindness I have found in you, imboldneth me to destre your company, and entreat you to accept of my Tent to repose your self in; for that I suppose you are a stranger, and is

were

were inconvenient for you to journey after so great a labour, having this day defended me, that I count my self yours, and my life preserved by your valour; therefore deny me not, but let me requite your kindness.

Montelion having heard Cothanes oftentimes commend the King for valour and courtesie, and knowing how to behave himself as well to the meanest as to the greatest (being by Cothanes nobly educated, and of his own inclination more apt to conceive, than they were to instruct) knowing him to be the King, said: Most honoured King, I am unfit to receive the Honour you proffer me, and my deserts not worthy the commendations you give them, therefore I beseech you not to attribute to me more then is befitting my mean estate, but rather Licence me to attend on you with all humble duty, my life & all my endeavours being vowed to be spent in your service, and my self ready at your disposition. This said, they went together to the Camp, where they were welcomed with shouts and rejoycings of all the Persian Souldiers.

Deloratus hearing the applaud, came forth of his Tent to see what was the cause thereof, and espying the King and the strange Knight together, came unto them, and they both alighted to salute him, but Deloratus would by no means suffer them to depart, but entreated them to lodge in his Tent that night, which they did not deny: Then taking Montelion in kind sort between them, entred the Tent, where he unarmed himself.

When they beheld his youth, they wondred greatly thereat, to be accompanied with such valour, both Deloratus and Persicles, using him with great kindness: Presently after the principal Commanders of the Camp assembled themselves together to their Generals Tent, to receive Orders; amongst the rest was Cothanes, who at the first entrance into the Tent espyed his Son Monnelion (his head being only unarmed) and by his Armour knew it was he that had so honourably preserved his life, he could not refrain from rejoycing: Likewise Montelion seeing him, upon his knee entreated him to pardon his boldness, for coming to the Camp without his consent. Cothanes took him up, and imbraced him, which the King seeing, said unto Cothanes, My Friend, is this thy Son? My Lord (said he) he is my Son,

and

and he calleth me Father, and yet I am unworthy to be Father of such a Son, who hath rather shewed himself the Son of some Heroick King, and because his worthiness shall not be darkned with the ignoble Title of my Son, I will declare to you all that I know of him: Indeed he is not my Son; but my Lady and I being one day a hunting, found him upon the top of a Mount in Swadling-cloaths, which was such as shewed he was not of mean Parentage, but of Honourable Race; his Nurse, as I suppose, being distressed for want of food, was wandred from him, whose Carcass and cloaths we found not far off destroyed by a Lyon, since which time we have with carefulness brought him up, esteeming him as my own Son; this my Lord is the whole sum of what I know of him.

They all marvelled at his words, especially Montelion, who was struck into such a deep meditation, that for a time he stood like one metamorphosed. The King then taking him by the hand, said: Although I know not what Title to give you, yet born you cannot be of less then Noble Blood, as doth appear by the manifest tokens of your heroick disposition, therefore remit the care of that till hereafter, and stay with us, who are comforted with your presence: My Lord, said he, were my desire more great than it is, yet the desire I have to do you service would surmount the same, being entirely devoted to your worthiness, which no desire of reward, hope of praise, or worldly respect hath bred in me, but only the instinct of Nature, that hath effectually engrafted the same into my heart; therefore I humbly desire you to bestow on me the honour of Knighthood, wherewith if I be dignified by your vertuous hands, I shall remain both with you, and endeavour to deserve the same. Persicles highly esteeming him, and kindly embracing him, told him he should that night be his Bed-fellow, and the net day have his desire. With many other speeches they ended the night, every Ruler departing with carefulness to set the Watches.

Richard Saunders
Book
1687

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How the *Armenians* Army with exceeding loss was discomfited.

EArly the next morning Deloratus, Persicles, Corbanes, and all the rest of the chief Commanders of the Persian Army were assembled, who gave order that every battel should be placed in such sort, as if they expected a present assault, which being performed, Montelion was with great triumph brought into the field, and by the King was invested with the honour of Knighthood, which when he received, the Souldiers gave an exceeding great shout.

The Armenians hearing so great a noise, could not judge what might be the cause thereof, some censuring one thing, and some another. Palian fretting exceedingly at his last days discomfiture, which went near his heart, for that in all the time of the War he had not endured the like, and calling to him the chiefest Knights in his Camp, which were Althesus, Golgorn, Mutalus, Lamdelion, Knights of honourable birth, great wisdom, and approved valour, uttering unto them his earnest desire of revenge, desiring them with all speed to counsel him, which way to suppress the enemies courage, only revived with the strange Knights aid; amongst whom it was agreed to surprize them unawares in the midst of their joy, that with all speed they arrived their forces, and without the sound of either Drum or Fife, issued the City Gates

Certain Persian Spies perceiving their intent posted to the Camp, and certified the General thereof, who gave command that without making any kind of suspition, they should continue in their mirth, so that thereby their foes should be heartned to their own destruction. Montelion with a party of Horsemen departed out of the Camp a contrary way to that the Armenians came, with an intent to get between them and the City, which afterwards came to good effect.

The Armenians thinking to make a sudden slaughter of them, and not at all suspecting their readiness to receive them, with careless

careleſs haſt approached the Camp, running upon their Enemies whom they found in ſuch orderly ſort ready to receive them, that in ſhort time they wiſhed themſelves again within the City. To recite every particular of their conflict, with what terror the battel continued, would dull my wits with confuſion, therefore my pen ſhall barely recite the admirable deeds of the moſt ſtouteſt of both Armies.

Perſicles conſidering what juſt cauſe he had, and with what equity he might challenge his right, wrongfully detained by his Uſurping Foe, bent his ſword point with unrelenting fury to the deſtruction of his enemies, pitying their deaths that fled by his ſword, aiming the ſame rather at Palians heart, then againſt them that were by force conſtrained to hazard their dear lives, which when he had dyed in gore-blood, he met with Palian, and at the firſt encounter had ſurely bereft him of life, had not his horſe by great misfortune ſtumbled at a dead body, that lay in the way, but yet his ſword by that miſchance miſſing his right aim, ran it quite through his Steeds neck, and both fell, lying grovelling on the ground, ready to be trodden to death. A valiant Knight that was next at hand, reſcued Palian, and mounted him on his own horſe, whereby he loſt his own life; for Perſicles ſtruck him ſuch a blow on the head, that with the force thereof, his Armour yielding, ſome ſcales pierced his brains, that he dyed. The two Kings for a while continued fight together, Palian with every blow receiving a deep wound, inſomuch that he knew he muſt either retire, yield, or dye; but then came Golgron to his aid, who with him maintained fight againſt Perſicles, who notwithſtanding that odds, had near hand brought them both to deſtruction, had not he eſpyed Deloratus and Cothanes in diſtreſs, who were aſſaulted by ſix valiant Knights, two of them being Altheſus and Lamdelion, unto whom he haſted, giving them ſuccour by the death of the firſt he met.

Whilſt the Battel was maintained in the Front by the chief Commanders of both the Armies, Montelion with his reſolute followers, whoſe hearts were inſpired with ſuch courage, to be guarded by ſo valiant a Guide, was gotten behind them, and began ſuch a Maſſacre, that multitudes on a ſudden was deſtroyed by his approach, whoſe deeds of valor amazed their ſen-

ses with such fear, and abated their courage with such terror; that like a flock of fearful sheep, espying the approach of a devouring Lyon, run with amazed fear from his paws, even so the Armenians fled from the destroying hand of Montelion, filling the Air with such dismal cries that the noise thereof daunted the hearts of the stoutest Armenians; Palion and Golgron then turned their backs, making thitherward to know the cause, Althesus and Lemdelion did the like; whilst Deloratus, Persicles, and the rest, made such havock amongst the Common souldiers, that had the fight continued long, all their enemies had been destroyed.

Palian and Althesus met Montelion, not knowing him, but supposing that it was he that had made such slaughter amongst them the last day, both assailed him, who in his heart rejoyced, that he had met with two such Champions to make tryal of his valour, continuing so brave a Combat between them both, as is not to be described.

By this time the cry began on the other side, with such a hideous noise, that Palian's heart was affrighted therewith, and defended himself, as if a slender Youth had encountred with a great Gyant, and began to sound a retreat, hasting to the City with all speed; which could not be accounted a retire, but rather an absolute flight, for it was done with such hast, as if they had been all amazed.

The day being thus ended, (to the terror of one, and comfort of the other) the Persians retired as [illegible], and the Armenians half mad with grief and despair [illegible] their Walls, not minding suddenly to issue out again. Persicles and Deloratus honouring Montelion with their kind embracings, and the Souldiers applauded their valour with great rejoycings, and every one (according to their present occasion) betook themselves to their charges, spending the day in more joy and security than ever they had done.

CHAP. XIV.

How the *Armenians* sent to two Kings for more aid into *Armenia*, who were met, and one of them taken Prisoner; and of other accidents that befel.

MOrning being come, Palian assembled his counsel together, to determine what Order to take for his security, which it behoved him to do; for that all their Forces were utterly discouraged, and the Inhabitants seeing their lawful King living, began to revolt, and denied to aid him either with Men or Money, that he was constrained to keep himself within the City walls, not suffering any to issue out, or daring indeed to do it, they were so strictly besieged by their Enemy. When they had well considered their estates, and the misery they were likely to fall into, concluded to send into Armenia to tell the King, which Althesus and one Mutellus, two Knights of great valor, undertook the next night to perform.

Montelion being at his Tent intending to repose himself, yet feeling no desire to sleep, called for The Chronicles of the Wars of *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, and spending some hours in reading that History, his Esquire being gone to bed, about the dead time of the night, he heard the neighing of a Horse as it seemed to him without the City, then reading, and again staying to listen, his mind being somewhat troubled, (being still in his Armor) he girded [illegible] sword to his side, determining himself to walk the rounds, to see how diligent the Watch was kept; whom he found sleeping as soundly, as if they had been in their beds, marvelling much at their drowsiness, but much more at their carelessness: he went from place to place, not minding that night to sleep but to watch for them all. He had not long stayed, but he espyed two in Armor, with hasty steps passing through the Camp on foot, whom he little suspected to be other than of his own company, thinking them to be some straglers, that seeing their fellows asleep, went to rob; following as closely as he could he perceiving them to depart the Camp, marvelling thereat, and so drew nigh to them, intending to know what they were, before

he departed. They perceiving one to follow them, and having gotten without the Camp, purposed to lay hold on him; and force him to declare what the Persians intended; so turning back to him, Altheſus offered to lay hands on him, (Soft quoth Montelion) let me first know what you are? We are enemies to thee, (ſaid Altheſus) and therefor yield. Tell me (quoth he) your names? Altheſus knowing himſelf to be of great valour, and little thinking he would have reſiſted them, told him his name was Altheſus. Then I defie thee (ſaid Montelion) for I am thy Enemy, and will rather dye then yield to thee: Then Altheſus drew forth his ſword and ſtruck at him, and Montelion did the like to defend himſelf, and afterwards he offended them ſo much, that both of them found much ado to ſave their own lives.

Altheſus ſeeing his valour, deſired to know his name, which he told him; which when he heard, and ſeeing Mutellus fallen, and faint with effuſion of blood, he thus ſaid:

Sir Knight, at this time I cannot ſtay to end the Combat, for by hazarding my life, I ſhall endanger the lives of many; therefore adieu till more convenient time to meet again: with that he turned his back, and Montelion ſtoopt to give his adverſary breath, which revived Mutellus, but ſeeing Altheſus gone, his heart was ready to dye with grief: He bid him be of good comfort, for his intent was to uſe him honourably, and helping him up led him to his Tent, and called up his own Squier to attend upon him, and diſarming him, he went preſently to the Noble King Perſicles.

The next day Montelion cauſed Mutellus to be carried before the General, where he declared the cauſe of their departure, which the King was glad to hear, that by his fore-knowledge he might prevent the intention of his enemies, but moſt of all he highly commended Montelion for this noble Act; which had not they been diſcovered, it might have brought the whole Camp into great diſtreſs, by this means every one growing into ſuch admiration of his valour, that they eſteemed him their only defence and ſafety, inſomuch that whereſoever he went, the eyes of multitudes followed him, being much delighted to behold him.

The Priſoner deſired the King to appoint his ranſom, but he com-

committed that to Montelion, who after he had honourably feasted him, sent him ransomless to the City, where he soon got entrance, and declared the misfortune had befallen him and Althesus, which turned their conceived hope of comfort into despair, and had overcome them with fear, had not some hopes of his escape revived them.

Many days they remained thus within the City, being so hardly besieged, that they were out of all hopes of getting any victuals, but were driven to content themselves with spare diet, scanting out every Souldier and Inhabitant their allowance, which they continued so long (expecting to hear from Armenia) but being frustrated expected nothing but miserable famine, that caused them late in the night to assemble their old, weak, and impotent men, unable to fight, and all women and children except some of great account, and turned them out of the City, to the number of fifteen thousand, whose distressed estate the King pitied, causing them to have sufficient sow, themselves building Cabbins to defend them from the weather.

Pericles seeing the miserable estate his own Country was in, and to what extremity the people were brought, and knowing that his Usurper was not able to endure, but that he, and all those within the City were ready to be starved; by the advice and counsel of those that he most esteemed, he sent a Herald unto Palian with this message:

That although he had unjustly usurped his Crown, and many other ways done him great injuries, yet pitying the miserable estate he was like to bring the Citizens into by his cruelty, he made him this proffer: That although he might work revenge by his death (whose life was now at his mercy) he should without interruption with all his Souldiers, have free liberty to depart out of *Assyria*.

The Herald with this Message went to the City, declaring the cause of his coming.

Palian hearing this Message, was puffed up with such choller, that he returned this answer.

That what he held was his right by conquest, & that he would hold, scorning he should send any proffer to him that was well able to defend himself, as little regarding his courteous proffer.

ver as his malice, wishing him not to stay long, lest his Fathers coming inflicted a greater punishment upon him, than he could eschew. Pericles was much enraged with his disdainful reply, fearing indeed that if the Kings forces were once come, it would be a great cause to lengthen out the Wars, which he earnestly desired might have an end, that he might travel in search of Constantia, for whom his heart endured much sorrow. Being thus disquieted in his thoughts, and desirous of ease to his restless passions, one day amongst many that he passed over with pensiveness, he got him to a solitary place, and there in a sad silence meditated upon his misfortune.

Montelion being troubled with remembrance of his unknown estate, chose the same place to utter his private griefs, wherein the King was already shrowded, and suddenly espying him, began to withdraw himself, but the King desiring him to stay, said: Worthy Knight, I perceive some inward care hath made you withdraw your self from me; but impart your discontent to me; if not, here mine, for I have desired to declare mine to one on whose fidelity I might repose my self; and you are the man I have elected, having had sufficient tryal of your courtesie and friendship, that without doubting, I dare commit my self to your secresie, for your aid may (as heretofore it hath) preserve me. My Lord (quoth he) I count my self only fortunate in your love, and my heart acknowledgeth everlasting duty to your Majesty, which bindeth me in all reverence to become your Vassal, being more ready to venture my life in your service than you can imagine; therefore, good my Lord, fear not to impose any task upon me, for in your imploying me, I shall account my self blessed and happy.

I thank thee good Friend (said the King) and if ever Fortune favour me again, I will requite this kindness, though now I am plunged in the depth of ill luck, being, as you see, deprived of my Kingdom, by the rebellion of mine own Subjects, and the Tyranny of the King of *Armenia*: The brief discourse whereof is this: My Father when he lived, matched my Sister *Piera* in Marriage to this worthy Knight *Deloratus*; sending me into *Persia* with him, who before my return dyed: whilst I was there I chanced to fix my eye on the beauty of *Constantia*, Daughter to the Em-

Emperor of *Perſia*, which by reaſon of my ſudden departure I could not give her notice of, having no other comfort but my Siſter *Piera*, to whom I told the ſecrets of my heart, departing with her promiſe of aſſiſtance. Whilſt I went into *Aſſyria* to eſtabliſh my Kingdom, Prince *Helion* of *Arabia* obtained the Emperors conſent to marry her, which news my Siſter ſent me. I being much troubled therewith, after I had repulſed my old enemy the King of *Armenia* in a battel, I left the Government of my Kingdom to two of my Nobles, and departed in habit of a Palmer into *Perſia*, where within ſhort ſpace I uſed ſuch means by my Siſters friendſhip, that I was in that habit without ſuſpition in her Chamber, and thereby had conference with *Conſtantia*, and attained her conſent, nothing remaining but only means to eſcape, which afterwards we effected, and travelling together till we came to a Shepherds houſe, where we were kindly welcome, contracting a ſolemn Marriage between our ſelves, becauſe we durſt not be known to the contrary, where we lived ſome days in quiet, in the mean time her father cauſed diligent ſearch to be made, and it was *Piſor*'s chance to find us, who kept our counſel, and was by me ſent into *Aſſyria* to fetch ſome of my own Knights to attend me home, where he found my Subjects at ſtrife, and the King of *Armenia* taking that opportunity, with a mighty band of Souldiers, ſlew moſt of my Guard, they joyning with him till he had ſeized my Crown. *Piſor* with this heavy news returned to me, being unwilling to give me knowledge thereof, which overcame my heart with ſuch grief, that ſeeking out a ſolitary place, I wandred ſo far that I could not return to the Shepherds houſe that night; ſhe miſſing me, alſo came forth the Cottage to ſeek me, but directing her ſteps a contrary way, or meeting with ſome misfortune, I never heard of her ſince. *Piſor* he likewiſe went forth to ſeek us, and ignorantly taſted of an unhappy fruit that infuſed a ſleepineſs upon him for the ſpace of four and twenty hours, but yet in his and my moſt earneſt ſearch we could never find her, and I fear never ſhall, but if I could recover this evil done by my foes, I would then ſpend the reſt of my life in her ſearch. **Having ended theſe ſpeeches, his heart was ſo much overcome with grief, that he had much ado to withold his eyes from tears.**

Montelion was oppreſt with no leſs grief then he, whoſe heart felt more inward diſquiet then a ſtrangers could have done, in ſilent ſadneſs ſeeming to partake of his ſorrows, but not able to counſel him which way to recrute them, that at laſt by reaſon the neceſſity of time afforded little reſpite, they were conſtrained to depart.

CHAP. XV.

How *Montelion* by a ſtrange and dangerous accident won the City, and took *Palian* priſoner.

MOntelion that night elected out of his own followers twenty knights, ſuch as he eſteemed moſt valiant, telling them he had a matter of great danger and ſecreſie to complot, which might be a means to eſtabliſh the King in his Kingdom, if they would faithfully joyn with him, which they all vowed to accompliſh, and follow him, though it were to their deaths. Arm you then (ſaid he) in Armenian Armour, of which you have choice, and come to me at midnight.

The knights being all come according to the appointed time, he departed with them through the Camp to the City Gate, and there he knocked, but ſcarce ſo loud that the Porter could hear him, who coming to the Battlements, demanded who it was? I am (quoth he) Altheſus and other Armenians, as thou mayeſt know by our Armour, and bring good news, therefore open the Gates, leſt by delay we are betrayed, for we are purſued. The Porter being haſty to ſuccour them, preſently unbolted the Gates. Montelion was no ſooner entred, but he ſlew the Porter, entring the Lodge, and fell upon the Watch that lay ſleeping, killing moſt of them before they awaked. One of them ſubmitted by himſelf, ſaid thus: I am an *Aſſyrian*, ſpare my life, and if you be friends of *Perſicles*, I will direct you how to ſurpriſe the City, and take the Uſurper.

In ſo doing (quoth he) thou ſhalt be honoured of the King, and purchaſe thy own liberty. After he had put the reſt to the ſword, the Aſſyrian directed them to the Palace, and by ſo ſecret a way that he brought them even within the compaſs of the Caſtle,

stle, to the very top where the Guard was. Montelion then said thus to his followers: My Champions, let not fear now possess your hearts, but by this exploit win Honor for ever; and by the Assyrians directions divided themselves into two parts, the one to the foremost entrance, & the other to a by way. Montelion knocking at the door, one of the Guard opened the same, and presently he rushed in with his Sword drawn, killing the first, and all that came within his compass. The Guardians were so amazed therewith, that they were confounded in their senses; their courages for want of time to consider abated, and their hands with fear and trembling not able to draw their swords, and when they had drawn them, knew not who to resist, for Montelion and his Knights were so like them in Armor, and so intermingled amongst them, that they knew them not from their own fellows, by which means Montelions Knights (who by a private mark knew one another) made such a slaughter amongst them that all the Floor did swim with blood: Some made means to fly out at the back door, but as they stepped out they met death, he that followed not knowing he that went before to be slain, and had they all come that way they would one by one have been destroyed, ỹ in the end by Montelion's Valor, there was not one left alive.

This Plot was performed with such expedition in the night time, that the rumor thereof came not to the hearing of any, so that within short space and little labor, Montelion surprized Palian in his Bed, who seeing one in Armor besmeared with blood, and his Sword drawn, starting up, asked what he was? I am thy Enemy (quoth Montelion) and Friend to Perficles: Thou art a Villain and a Traitor (said *Palian*) and then he called to his Guard, crying out Treason, Treason, I am betrayed, Help, Help.

Thou cryest in vain (said Montelion) for there is none near to hear thee, for by this hand thy Guard are slain: And thou shalt follow the same unto death, unless thou dost ask mercy, for my hands can hardly abstain from working revenge on thy Traitors head, thou hast deserved to be punished with inexpressible torments. Montelion had scarce made an end of his speeches but he heard the eccho of a great out-cry solicite his ears, the

 ecca-

occasion was this: After Montelion was departed his Tent, his Esquire following him, and seeing him enter the City with so few in his company, ran back with all speed, and told the King what he had seen, who fearing that rash attempt might endanger his life, and hearing that he had gotten entrance into the City: Armed himself, calling up Deloratus, Osimus, Pisor, Corhanes, and all the rest of his chief Commanders of his Army, with the chiefest of their bands, to the number of twenty thousand, and marched to the City Gates, which they found wide open, and being entred, and by several companies dispersed into every corner of the streets, presently on every side, they gave an Alarum, which sounded so terrible in the ears of all the Armenians, that like men bereft of their senses, they ran up and down to their own Destruction. There did Deloratus fill his hands with slaughter, and Pisor with cruelty revenge his with-holden liberty; there did Corhanes and Osimus with many thousands, colour pale Death with red, and there did the King Triumph over his Foes, his conquering sword working their deaths, that the City Channels ran with gore blood, and their hasty steps intercepted by heaps of men that lay dead on the ground; then began such an out-cry as would have frighted the senses of the most valiant; Old men hiding their heads in their houses, the Women with their Children, crying, wringing their hands, making great lamentation; the Souldiers ready to kill one another, not knowing whom to offend, being ignorant of the beginning of this Tragedy.

The Counsellors, and such as sat in Seat of Justice, with all hast went to the Castle, wherein Palian was, where at their first entrance they found what sad spectacles of horror and dread had already entred there, laying open passage to death. Montelion's Knights (though but few) soon laid hands on them, slaying those that resisted; and enclosing them that yielded within a strong Tower.

By this time Montelion had haled Palian forth his Chamber, and bound him Hand and Foot, enclosing him in a strong Jayl; where many Malefactors were imprisoned, himself being his Jayler, and having intelligence that the King was entred the City, he bent his steps to find him out, by the way killing

the

the Armenians, who took him to be one of their own Officers by his Armor.

At last he came to the Abbey, where the greatest part of the Enemy lay, in a large field, encompassed within the Wall, whereinto the King with three thousand Souldiers were before entred making such a slaughter as would have grieved a heart of any beholder.

Montelion being alone, thought now or never to make tryal of his valor, though being on foot, yet rushing amongst the thickest of his Enemies, who seeing him in that Armor, thought he had been rather one of their Chief Commanders than a Foe, who frantick with the fright, slaughtered them, because they were slow to kill their Enemies, which when he perceived, he cryed unto them, Villains, Traitors, Cowards, why do you shun me? I am your Enemy, a Persian, and come to destroy you; notwithstanding his speeches, by reason they had no time to consider what to do, they still fled from him, not so much with the thought of what he was, as with fear to come near him, for none came within his compass but he dyed; so that where he fought Death triumphed, and by reason of their flight, his hasty blows were spent in vain.

The King and Deloratus being nigh, stood and beheld him with admiration, wondring who it was (that they thought) with such fury fought against himself, until he espyed them, by his speeches giving them notice who he was. Having found him they desired, they followed their Enemies with cruel destruction, the bright day discloseing the bloody act of that night, which appeared before them with such a grim Aspect, that it made terror seem terrible, and before many hours of the day were spent, the Armenians were utterly destroyed.

The King gave a strict Order for diligent search to be made through all the City, and if they found any Rebels to put them to the Sword, which done, he commanded the dead Carcasses to be carried in Carts out of the City, which were so many, as that they had much ado to perform it in a days time: when he had done this, he gave the spoil of the Enemies Tents and Houses unto the Persian Souldiers, and also gave commandment that all the Women, Children, Old men, and impotent people,

should be brought into the City, and every one possess his own House wherein he dwelled before: This being performed, and for that day order being taken for the wounded, the Souldiers enriched with spoil, the Citizens at quiet in their Houses, diligent Watch set at each Gate, and a strong Guard within the Tents, with that it drew to night, and their labor required ease, after much toyl they betook themselves to their rest.

Early the next morning they forsook their Pavilions, and appointed certain Scouts to watch about the borders of the Country for the approach of the King of Armenia, which they all supposed would be very shortly, for it was now two months since Altheus departed.

By that time the day was aged the space of three hours, the Inhabitants of Assyria that had lived under the subjection of the Armenians, hearing of Falian's overthrow, and being assured of Perficles's safety (which before they would not believe) came in multitudes to submit themselves unto their lawful King, who accepting thereof, had them in sign of their obedience arm themselves and return to their own houses, and destroy all the Armenians that inhabited the Land of Assyria, not suffering Man, Woman, or Child to live.

It was a wonder to behold with what greedines the Multitudes bent themselves to their Enemies destruction, every one thinking to be foremost, and he that was last, thinking himself happy if he could grasp a Sword to seek his own liberty: which they effected within three days, that there was not any of the Armenian-Progeny left.

If they had found an Assyrian woman married to an Armenian man, both she and all her Children dyed, and if they found a woman with child, or having any children, if she could not shew an Assyrian was the Father of them, they had all of them been slain.

In the mean while, all those that were prisoners, were brought forth. Perficles by the consent of his Nobles, People, & Counsel, appointed them to dye (Falian excepted) who also had that day suffered a shameful death, had he not been a King's Son, being only committed to safe custody, where he was honorably used.

These

These Tragical stratagems overpast, and all things in security, yet the beauty of the Land was destroyed by the Armenians, and now the Nobles and peers of the Land that durst not look over the Castle walls, assembled themselves unto the King, making all the preparation they could for his more honorable entertainment: the Bells rung for joy, and the people with great joy applauded his Victory. Within few days he was again Crowned King of Assyria, and Montelion honored with such commendations as his worthiness deserved; every one (as of right they should) attributed that honored Victory to his Valor: all men growing into deep affection towards him, and with rejoycings manifest their love.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the King of *Armenia*'s arrival with a new Army; how *Montelion* set *Palian* at liberty, and of a peace that was concluded.

Whereas certain of the Spys had knowledge of the approach of the King of Armenia, and brought News thereof to the Court, which stirred up new discord amongst them, for then they began on all sides to arm themselves afresh: But that was soon stayed by the coming of Imbassadors from the King of Armenia, who delivered their Message, thus.

Persicles of Assyria; The mighty King of Armenia commands thee to deliver his Son Palian in safety, whom he understandeth thou hast taken Prisoner: withal, he requires restitution to be made of the Crown and Kingdom of Assyria; which by right of ancient inheritance is his: otherwise he will bring so puissant and invincible an Army against thee, that shall waste and consume this Land, not leaving City, Town, nor houses, he will make the Inhabitants perpetual Bond-slaves, and he will cause thee to die, or abiding his coming, he will take thee captive, and lead thee into Armenia, where thou shalt remain his Vassal. This is the sum of what he requireth, therefore let us have answer. I will not stay (said Persicles, what to say, but thus say to him: his Son is my Prisoner, and I will detain him, as for his threats, I fear them not; utterly denying his false Title to my Crown, which

which in my absence he seised upon, not by Valor, but by Treachery, and tell him that I demand restitution for the wrong he hath done me and my Countrey, which if he deny, nothing shall make me satisfaction but his Sons death; and tell him thus: Let him with haste return, lest my fury overtake him, and so he feel the mischief he intendeth to me, for I mean to meet him presently, and work such destruction amongst his Souldiers, as shall cause them to seek his life for betraying them into my hands.

Persicles spake these words with such fury, that the Ambassadors believed he would do it, and so they departed. The King of Armenia little thinking to receive such an answer, but rather performance of his demand, was so enraged, that he presently commanded his Souldiers to march to the City, vowing to redeem his Son, or to be taken Prisoner himself. Persicles also had collected a mighty Band of Persians and Assyrians to meet him, that this was likely to prove the hottest Battel that ever was fought in that part of the world.

In the mean time Palian was brought before Persicles, who was seated upon his Kingly Throne in great Majesty, and then said: What canst thou alledge to excuse thy self from death, having rightly deserved the same? thou know'st that it now resteth in my power to set thee free, or put thee to death, which the just heavens have inflicted upon thee, as a due punishment for thy tyrany.

I am (quoth Palian) a King as absolute as thy self, therefore I know thou dares not put me to death; which if thou shouldest presume to attempt, I know that my Father is hard at thy Elbow to revenge the same, whose power thou canst not escape: therefore I defie thee, and dare thee to do the same, for I know thee to be of so cowardly a disposition, that when thou doest once come within my Fathers sight, thou wilt run away. The people that stood by hearing this, cryed out, Hang him up, Let him dye, Let him dye, and it was long before the multitude would be appeased; but at length the King said: Traitor, darest thou utter these words in my presence? thou shalt assuredly dye, all the World shall not redeem thee, and so commanded his Guard to hew him in pieces. Whereupon they began to wound him; but Montelion steping between them, and humbling himself

ſelf upon his knee, thus ſaid: Moſt Noble King; vouchſafe to hear me ſpeak, and without offence let me claim my Right: This Knight is my Priſoner, and to put him to death without my conſent, were to do me wrong: Yet although I ſpeak this, pardon me, I ſpeak not any thing to contradict your will, but I humbly deſire your Majeſty to grant me this favour, that as I took him, ſo I may diſpoſe of him.

The King with great haſt roſe from his Seat and embraced Montelion, ſaying: Were it my Kingdom, my life, or any thing elſe that I eſteem more than both, that you required, I would for ever curſe my heart if I ſhould deny it you, for you have done me ſo much good, and my debt is to you ſo great, that if I live a thouſand years, I ſhall never pay: therefore I give him freely unto you, and his life withal. I humbly thank you (replyed he) and ſo took his Priſoner by the hand, and after humble Reverence done, he departed, to whom being alone, ſaid: Noble Prince, not expecting reward, nor fearing threats, I here give you liberty. Then did he deſire him to make choice of his Horſe and Armor, and arming himſelf, rode diſcourteouſly away, his ſtout heart not ſuffering him to give *Montelion* thanks being come to the Camp, he humbled himſelf to his Father, who embracing him ſaid: My dear Son welcome: Then ſtrutting up and down, ſaid: I thought that Daſtard *Perſeles* durſt not detain thee, for if he had, his life had paid thy Ranſom, and ſhall do yet for keeping thee ſo long: by *Jupiter*, this night will I fire the City about his ears, becauſe I know the Coward dares not come forth to meet me.

Hearing his Father thus boaſt, and knowing how unlikely he was to perform it, ſuch a paſſion of deep conſideration, changed in him ſuch a ſudden alteration contrary to his former diſpoſition, and calling to remembrance how lately he was in danger of death, the great power Perſicles has about him, the late ſlaughter he had made amongſt his Souldiers, the courteſie of Montelion: but moſt of all his ungratitude towards him that had given him his life, thus ſaid:

My Noble Father, not the fear of your Forces, nor *Perſicles* Cowardize (for by his own doom I had dyed) ſet me at liberty: but the courteſie of a noble Knight, who took me Priſoner, who when

when *Perficles* had appointed my death, and the Executioner seising on me, challenged me to be his Prisoner, honourably armed me, and courteously let me go: therefore I beseech you withdraw your Forces, and offer no wrong to *Perficles*, who never offended you: the Kingdom of *Armenia* is as good as *Assyria*, and better, and it is better to enjoy that, with quiet, than both that and this with discontent; if not for that, yet for this, I humbly entreat you to conclude a Peace with *Perficles*, for your own safety, for his power is too mighty to be subdued by these small Forces you have brought, he is now allyed to the *Persian*, who is yet no enemy, but wholly your friend: but if these Wars continue long: he will prove your mortal Foe: if you go forwards, I must stay behind, for it were a great dishonour for me to fight against him that hath so honourably set me at liberty: if you should be overcome, how much would it endanger your life: and if your life were in danger, do you think we could escape? besides, I will submit my self into the hands of your Enemies, or rather spill my own blood before your face, than live to see so dismal a day as that will prove; therefore I humbly desire you to conclude a Peace.

The King heard out his speeches with silent verations, being so inwardly enraged, and with desire of thirsting after revenge that his heart was ready to burst with malice; but at last being mollified rather with despair of victory, than of yeilding to his Sons request, he said; let it be as you would have it, for this time you shall over-rule me.

Noble Father (quoth he) I know to conclude this Peace will turn to our everlasting good, and your own content: Perficles is Honorable and never offended you, and I know he will embrace it, therefore I desire you, let it be concluded with your free consent: whereupon he gave his consent: willing him to conclude what he thought good.

Palian mounting himself, set spurs to his Horse, with all speed riding towards the City, where he met with Perficles's mighty Band of Souldiers, and desiring to speak with Montelion, he kindly embraced him, yeilding him so many hearty thanks, with such courtesie, love & earnest affection, with many earnest vows for preserving his life, that Montelion wondred at the sudden alteration

teration in him, that before was so rude and discourteous, most lovingly embraced him: then did he unfold the cause of his coming with such earnestness, entreating Montelion to joyn with him to conclude the peace, that he promised him assistance, so they went both unto the King.

Palian delivered his Message with humble reverence, & Persicles with as much courtesie received it, and so effectually was this wrought, that the peace was accepted, and both the Armies meeting in the field, in stead of blows embraced each other, and both the Kings saluted each other, first in strange sort, but afterwards with more familiarity. After many speeches on both sides, Persicles accusing him of wrongs, and he still alledging the contrary, but Palian laboured earnestly to conclude ỳ peace, yet the battel was like to joyn, and oftentimes they both grew to great rage, which by Montelion's & *Palian's* perswasions was concluded. Growing to this conclusion, a Peace was ratified for two years, in which time Ambassadors should be sent to the Emperor of Persia, and the King of Macedonia, to entreat their Royal assistance to make an end of this Controversie.

Persicles's heart could hardly endure to yeild to his Foe so far, or abstain himself from revenge, or appoint his rightful estate to be determined by the doubtful case of Arbitrement, in his heart disdaining his enemy should have so much scope limitted him, as though he had interest at all in his Kingdome, but rather that then he should either absolutely win all, or lose all: but regarding how much he had troubled Deloratus and the *Persians*, who now desired to return home to their own Countrey: but most of all being desirous to travel in search of his dear Love, from whom he had long been absent, for whose safety he would have lost life, Kingdom and liberty, whose absence was a continual grief to his Conscience, utterly despairing of finding her: but yet that, nor any other ambiguity could cause him to desist, but ỳ he would depart in her search, thinking she was living, therefore he yielded to any thing.

Having taken the King of Armenia's Oath, not to interrupt him in his Kingdom till the time prefixed, they parten, *Persicles* to the City, and the King with his Army to Armenia, *Palian's*

mind was linked in such admiration of Montelions vertues, that he humbly entreated his Fathers leave to bear him company, but he denyed him, reproving him greatly with bitter terms; yet notwithstanding within few days after he departed in disguise. The King would have sent after him to have staid him, but his Nobles perswaded him to the contrary.

Palian being arrived at the Assyrian Court, declared to Montelion the cause of his leaving his Fathers Court, which was with no other intent (he said) than to enjoy his company, and to do Persicles service; which proceeded not from any coloured dissimulation, but from the depth of a constant resolution. Such an alteration had Montelion's vertues and his fathers tyranny wrought in him, that he admired the one, and abhored the other; of which he gave such manifest tokens, that Persicles had no cause to misdoubt him, nor Montelion to refuse his familiarity.

CHAP. XVII.

How after the Peace concluded, *Persicles* left the Government of *Assyria* to *Pisor*, determining himself to travel in search of *Constantia*: How they arrived in *Persia*: of their honorable entertainment, and of the contrarious accidents in Love that befel in the *Persian* Court.

After all these Troubles were over-past, & Persian Souldiers richly sent home, and Persicles had established his Kingdom, leaving the same to the government of Pisor he determined to travel in search of Constantia, making the occasion of his departure to be to accompany Deloratus into Persia, none but Pisor and Montelion knowing the contrary. By the way as they went Cothanes desired them to visit his Habitation, which the rather they did, to see the Cloathes that were found about Montelion: They were honourably welcomed, and Royally feasted, Cothanes's Lady bringing forth the Packet, which they opened, and well viewed, neither Persicles nor Deloratus knowing any of them (for they were such as Constantia had in Arabia.) Amongst the rest there was a Jew-

el

el of exceeding richnes, which Montelion in the presence of them all put about his neck, vowing solemnly never to part with it until he had found out his Parents.

Afterwards they departed, Montelion leaving Cothanes and his Foster Mother, who bewailed his departure with abundance of tears: But within few days they arrived in Persia, the Emperor sending out Troops of Gallant Knights to attend them, the States, Nobles, and Peers of the Land in rich attire to entertain them, and himself with the Empress, Piera, and a number of other Gallant Ladies, forsaking the Court to meet them; the Citizens hearing of their approach, prepared to entertain them with delightful shows. The Knights met them some two miles from the City, welcoming Deloratus with great reverence, & the other three Knights with courtesie; the Nobles embracing them, and at the gate they saw the Emperor with his Royal Assembly staying their coming, unto whom Deloratus knæled, whilst they with tears welcomed his safe return; and whilst he embraced Piera, the Emperor and Empress saluted Persicles; and when they had left them to speak to Piera, they demanded of Deloratus who these strange Knights were: one of them (said he) is our late reconciled friend Palian, and the other is the most valiant Knight Montelion: that by his valour hath preserved our lives, confounded his enemies, and won himself immortal honor. The Emperor had Palian welcome into Persia, and then he very kindly embraced Montelion, who with reverence fell at his feet.

All that beheld him, admired that one so young should be endued with such Chivalry; and the Ladies with their nice eyes surveyed each part of his perfect Lineaments, which they found to be most exquisite. All tedious salutations being past, they came to the Court, and entred with such Royalty as it drave an admiration to the beholders eyes: There might one see the people with greedinesse throng to behold them, but especially the white Knight, every one asking which was he? that he himself could hear them, which oftentimes made the blood revive in his cheeks with a lovely blush. To rehearse every particular, would be too tedious; and to stay long in recital of their Royal entertainment, Feasts, Speeches, and Welcomes, would detain

you from the hearing of Constantias mis-fortunes, for such entertainment was there, and every-thing performed with such Royalty, as might have beseemed the greatest Monarch in the world: After Supper, the time of rest being come, the aged Emperor and Empress bad good night to their Guests, & every one betook themselves to their several Lodgings, remitting all conference until the next days opportunity.

The King being alone, studied most part of the night which way to travel in search of Constantia, Montelion in thinking of his unknown Parents, Palian surfeiting in love with Praxentia, and she in commendation of Montelion, Deloratus in pleasure with Piera, and the old Emperor and Empress in joyful remembrance of all their safeties, every one possessed with a several conceit till sleep obtained their senses.

Early the next morning they forsook their beds, Persicles and Deloratus in conference with the Emperor and Empress, and Piera in the hearing of the Princess, and other Ladies rehearsing the Wars in Assyria, and the manner of their victory. Montelion in company of Palian, commending the Royalty of the Persians Court, and the beauty of the Ladies: which speech they entred into by reason of Palian, whose heart could not chuse but utter his inward thoughts, which had entertained a surfeiting view of the Princess Praxentias beauty, which was so exquisite as might have entangled the senses of any man but Montelion resolved as free as one that never thought of love, having his senses so fully possessed with desire to seek his Parents, and search for Constantia, that no other thought should enter his breast: but such a contrariety had blind fortune wrought among them, that every one desired a contrary thing: for Palian doted so much on Praxentia, as she did on Montelion: and he was so far from thinking any such thought, as it was in vain for her to hope. Palian seeking to give her knowledge thereof, and she expecting when Montelion would proffer love to her: and he on the other side, seeking means to hasten Persicles's departure, which he would instantly have done, but that he could not so soon seek to leave the Emperor nor his Sister: yet notwithstanding the Emperor requested him to stay a month, which he could by no means deny. Palian was glad of this, and Praxentia was not sorry: onely Montelion

telion thought he would be too tedious becauſe his affections were wholly bent on his journey.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Praxentia* ſent her Nurſe to *Montelion*, how ſhe took *Palian* for *Montelion*, and to him diſcovered her ſecrets.

PAlian adviſed by all means he could to have conference with the Princeſs, refuſing reſt, food, and company, to ſtudy thereon; oftentimes enjoying her company, but had not the opportunity he expected, ſurfeiting with beholding her beauty, and tying himſelf faſter in the ſnares of Love, finding no hopes of comfort; but on a day it thus fell out, ſhe deſiring eaſe, ſent a Damoſel to an old Lady named Lanula, willing her to come and ſpeak with her, who preſently came, & being alone, they had this conference.

Lanula (ſaid ſhe) I have occaſion of your aſſiſtance in a matter of great ſecreſie, which I have refuſed to impart to any but your ſelf; for the good opinion I have of you, is, that you may do me a pleaſure, and everlaſtingly bind me to requite the ſame. The old Lady was forward of her ſelf, that without further entreaty ſhe ſwore ſhe would do as ſhe would have her, were the matter never ſo great, yea if it hazarded her own life. I have no reaſon to miſtruſt thee (ſaid ſhe) yet I cannot but bluſh at the rehearſal of it. Lady (quoth ſhe) will you pardon me if I tell you what it is; Is it not love; Yes (ſaid ſhe) it is ſo, I am in love, but I fear I am not beloved, and him I love, is ſo honorable a Knight, as the world yields not his fellow, but being a ſtranger and unknown, I know he dares not tell that he loves me, becauſe my Father will never conſent thereto; yet I could be contented with his eſtate, were it never ſo mean I have often been in his company ſhewing my ſelf deſirous thereof, which any but himſelf might perceive, but I ſpent that labour in vain, and ſhall do ſtill, unleſs you work ſome means in my behalf. Tell me his name (ſaid Lanula) and before many hours paſt, I will by ſome means or other have conference with him. It is the ſtrange Knight Montelion, ſay

what

what thou wilt to him, without impeaching my modesty, and I care not: for not being by, I shall not blush, neither care I to hazard any thing, for if he once go from hence, I shall never see him again. As she had spoken that word, she espyed him walking alone at the further end of the Garden, entring into a Grove: Yonder he is (said Praxentia) Lanula told her she would then speak, and so departed.

Montelion being come to the further end of ỳ Garden, espied Palian lying upon a Bank, either sleeping, or in a deep study, passing by him unseen, for he desired no company, and entred the Grove: Lanula also seeing him, espyed Palian, not knowing either, saluting him in stead of Montelion, said: Sir Knight, to you I have a matter of importance to discover, if your name be *Montelion*: He answered not, but with courtesie bad her say on. There is (said she) a Lady of great Renown in this Court, that beareth you deep affection, who committed her Counsels to me, (but with no intent I should disclose them) yet pitying her grief, and withal wishing your preferment, am thus bold to intercept your meditation, hoping ỳ this News cannot be but gratefully accepted. I heartily thank you (quoth he) assuring you that I am every way as deeply in love as any, but with one so far my better, that fearing to offend maketh me silent; therefore let me know the Ladies name. It is Praxentia (said she:) And to her (quoth he) I owe my Life, Love, Affections, and Liberty. Sir (said she) I am glad thereof, and if you will follow my directions, I will work so effectually, that you shall enjoy her love, whosoever saith the contrary. I will be ruled by you (quoth he) neither will I refuse any attempt to attain the same; therefore pray tell me where I may find you, and soon in the evening I will come to you. My name is *Lanula* (said she) and you shall have me in the Lodgings over the Postern in the private Garden. So she departed, leaving him in a deep meditation what to do to enjoy her love, and how to do it without dishonor to himself, and injury to Montelion, but that he thought impossible, entring into these meditations.

How contrary is my hap to all good success, that maketh me hazard my Hõnor, to adventure such a task as may bring me to perpetual infamy? How often hath my life bẽn hazarded by Monte-

ease her of her disquiet; gladly consented thereunto
g the time too tedious, company troublesom, and her
r unfavoryt to taste the sweetness of her stolen affection.
Pali. at the time appointed went to Lanula, who had already
provided his disguise, wherewith he apparelled himself, and took
her directions to find the entrance into her Chamber.

Palian being entred the Garden, found the door shut, but Praxentia having a sight of him out of her window, came down her self to open the same. His heart was so ravished with joy of her presence, that he could not speak, but humbling himself upon his knee, said Vertuous Lady: I humbly beseech you to pardon this my boldness, which I would never have undertaken, had not some former hope animated me thereunto; but since it is your gratious pleasure so much to honor my unworthiness, I humbly give my heart to your disposition, which shall account it self everlastingly happy to be imployed in your service.

Good Knight (said she) had I not been fully assured of your vertues, I would never have admitted you this favour; therefore I accept your gift, and in exchange thereof will give you mine, so that you promise me to use it honorably. Else (said he) let me become the infamous reproach of all the world let my joys be turned into sorrows, my health into sickness, my pleasure into pain, and all that I wish to prove my good, turn to everlasting misery. Your Protestations dear Knight (qd. she) are of sufficiency to overcome my yielding heart, that harboreth no misdoubt of your disloyal meaning, but is fully assured your vertues cannot harbor dissimulation, that is altogether different from vertue: therefore trusting you more than my self, I admit you that favour I never before granted, which is, to receive you as my chosen friend, trusting you will be as faithful as I desire, and will not reward my favour with disloyalty.

So taking him by the hand she led him up into her Chamber, where many speeches past betwixt them, he with earnestness intreating her consent to love him; and she binding him by many Oaths & Vows to be constant. He durst not utter many speeches lest he should be discovered, also his conscience being guilty, withheld him from boldness, and though peradventure she would have taken any thing in good part yet fear to discover himself did

make him think no such matter, but in his behaviour he could, framed himself to the state of Montelion; which her self, who although she were very affectionate her self, imputed his coloured modesty to vertue, and his dissimulat[illegible] to pure modesty, that by his conference he was fully assured of her love, and she of his loyalty, being now constrained by reason of the daies approach, to break off their communication, referring their next meeting to Lanulaes direction, parting with many courteous farewels; she fully contented, he somewhat discontented, that he had attained that favour in another mans name, which if he had attained as proper to himself, he should have deemed himself most happy; being clogged with these cogitations he got to Lanulaes Chamber, to whom he discovered his fortunate success, telling her, that in the evening he would come to her to know the Princes pleasure, and her direction to speak with her another time.

CHAP. XX.VIII

How *Montelion* was in Love with *Praxentia*, how he was prevented by *Palian* of speaking to her, who in disguise lay with her.

IN the morning early the Princess forsook her Rest, and though she slept but little that night, yet she was loath to be accused of sloath, apparelled her self, framing a more than ordinary joyful countenance (for her mind was more at ease) she attended the Empress in company of other Ladies: And it fell out that day, that the Emperor with the Peers of the Land feasted with Perficles, Montelion and Palian, which fell out according to her wish, that she might behold her beloved Knight with a surfeiting view, and he was no less glad than she, that he might see her on whom his heart was fixed; and every one having Perficles and Montelion had their hearts inclining to disport, only they two rested sad, and was easily to be espyed and chiefly noted by Praxentia with one conceit, and Palian with another.

All Dinner time Praxentia's eyes were fixed on Montelion, and Palians on hers, bending down with a heavy aspect, which put her

ber into many cogitations, sometimes thinking he disdained to look on her openly, who had shewn her self so kind in secret, and then she thought it was fear to discover her love, (which is easily discovered by the eyes) but when again she saw he made no regard to her, her colour often changed, sometimes with grief, sometimes with anger, sometimes with fear, fixing her eyes stedfastly on him, then glancing about to see if any noted her. Palian minded her, and well understood her meaning, as earnestly noting her behaviour as she did Montelion's, often changing his countenance, sometimes with fear to be seen, and then with a jealous conceit, then with an amorous thought, and then again with accusing himself of disloyal dealing both towards her and him.

Pieraes mind was most at leasure to note all, which she performed with diligence; and seeing their eyes placed on several objects, she thought there was as contrary a sympathy in their affections, well perceiving Palian's deceit, Praxentia's disquiet, and Montelion's careless regard of either; by a privy token, unseen of any, she gave her Brother an instance thereof: he quickly conceived her meaning, and jumpt with her in opinion. all Dinner time noting them; which being past, and Musick filling the Room with pleasant Harmony; Persicles pulling Montelion by the sleeve, whispered these words softly into his ear: Friend rouze your self from this sad dump, and behold how you are noted; On my life the Princess is in Love with you, and if it be so, you may account your self most happy.

My Lord (replied he) you are disposed to jest, no such good fortune will fall to me, yet if it did, I know I should never enjoy it. Why (quoth he) had you but seen so much as I, and noted her looks, you would think so too: Follow my counsel, do but try, and you shall find it so: What if she were Empress of the whole world, would you not venture? were she not the better to be beloved, and have not you the less cause to despair, that she would refuse your love? All the doubt you have, is her Fathers dislike, but fear not that, Time may bring things unlooked for to good effect; do but follow my counsel for this time and after I will tell you more.

By this time the Musick was ended, and Montelion cast his

eye on Praxentia, who stedfastly looked on him, her heart was so much grieved with contrariety of thoughts, that the water was ready to overflow her eyes. When Montelion saw that, he presently begun to perceive some hope, and by little and little Love stole the possession of his heart, withal, he remembred what Palian had before said to him all this seemed likelyhoods that it was so: As he continued in these thoughts and with more boldness had viewed her well (whose eyes were never off him) the Musick began to sound again and the Old Emperor of Persia being pleasant and merry with feasting, took the Empress by the hand to dance; Perseides seeing that, took Piera; then said the Emperor, is there none will make a third? Piera desirous to shew Montelion any favour, desired him to do it. But he with mildness, made a refusal, in regard of his duty to the Emperor. But suddenly Palian step'd up and took Praxentia to dance with him, who being of a mild behaviour refused not, and the rather, that none should note her affection to Montelion, which she assured her self, he could not call in question.

Montelion was exceedingly loved to be so prevented, yet smothered the same with a pleasant countenance. The Musick being ended, the Emperor with the Empress departed, leaving them to their recreation. Then Palian began to be disquieted, with fear, lest Montelion by conference with Praxentia should discover his last deceit, and he by that means be prevented of all future hope, therefore he used such means that Montelion could have no conference with her, which he by reason of his fear, durst not seek, nor she expect, thinking to have a time of more convenience to meet.

All this while Montelion did but intangle himself in the snare of affection, still looking to like, and liking to love, and the more he looked the more he loved, being for that time contented to look, for other hope he attained not, by reason of Palian's prevention, and his own fear to be accounted bold, which he thought she might well impute to his mean estate. The time of departure being come, and every one ready to bid adieu, Praxentia gave him a sign of her love, with a modest, gentle, and kind look, and he her of his duty, with low courtesie.

Every one departed, Praxentia troubled with the doubt of she could

could not tell what; for weighing his behaviour, she could not compare it to be like the behaviour of an assured Lover, neither could she account it disdain or want of government, for she knew him wise; not want of audacity, for he was bold enough in other matters; nor to inconstancy for she could not perceive his looks bent upon any other; troubled with a multitude of these passions, by reason of the truth, she made the best construction of all things, wishing Palian had been further off that day, whom she thought of purpose had intercepted their conference. But to ease her of these troubled cogitations, Lanula comes in with a message from Palian, for as soon as the company was parted, went to her, and noting with what little respect Montelion had that day regarded her, he thought some mischief might cross his further intent, and fearing withal lest she should send to him, he sent this Message. That with all humility he desired her not to misconceive his meaning; for the little respect he gave unto her, was with no other intent than to avoid suspition, his heart being entirely bound in all duty to her command. This message pleased her well, and banished all mists of malice from her heart, desiring with Lanula for a convenient time to have conference with him.

Montelion had now taken such a view of her beauty, that he yielded to love thrall, and according to his distempered mind was pleased with nothing but solitariness, in silence to meditate upon his misfortune, on his Love, and his unlikelihood to attain thereto; on Palian's prevention, and his unknown estate, and on his vowed journey in search of Constantia: being troubled with such contrarieties, that he could not resolve upon any thing, tiring his sences with meditation, wearying his heart with grief, and weakning his body with abstinence, void of means, hope, or comfort; he thought to write, but he wanted a secret Messenger; then he thought within himself to speak to her, but he fearing a denial would be his reward, and that would be worse than Death.

Thus troubled in mind he betook himself to his rest, scarce able to give his eyes one minutes sleep until morning, and then again as void of comfort as if he dreamed a thousand impossibilities, neither able by the counsel of Pericles nor otherwise, to devise a means to speak, for his love was so violent, that it could not

be

be permanent. Fortune intending quickly to overturn the same, for Palian by indirect policy, dealt so cunningly, that by often recourse unto her, won her to such an absolute consent, that she rested wholly at his disposition, never coming to her but in secret, and so late that all lights were out: Besides, the old Lady first taking him for Montelion, never made question but that it was he by which means he always passed undiscryed, and she told all her secrets unto him, that whatsoever he would desire she performed; and all that he perswaded her to was but means to prevent his disloyalty, perswading her to keep her Chamber for many daies: so that contrary to her expectation, with distemperature of watching and keeping her self in a close room, she began to way sickly, which Lanula made known to him, appointing him the next day to come to her, and he should know when again to visit her, and in the mean time she wrought so effectually with the Emperor and Empress, as they had appointed her to be her keeper, and none to come at her, but upon her sufferance, which pleased the Princess well. Night being come, Palian went to Lanula's Chamber, where he found her, declaring all that had happened, appointing him that night to come thither; Lanula returning, would not make known his coming to her that night, because she should not break her sleep.

At the time appointed Palian was in the Garden, and Lanula ready to receive him, conducting him up the stairs to the Princes Chamber, who was then in her bed and fast asleep: he seating himself down by her, although the lights were out, yet by the brightness of the Moon, whose splendor shined clear upon the Bed, he might take a view of her, who by reason of the heat, lay with all the Curtains folded, and the covering that lay upon her so thin, that the full proportion of her delicate body might easily be seen, the same being folded down below her waste, her neck naked, and her Ivory breasts passing description, laying forth their beauties, her arms spread one above her head, the other down by her side.

Palian beholding this pleasant sight (which was able to ravish the sences of a modest beholder,) that his heart was so enflamed as he had much ado to abstain from touching that beauty. He had not stood long, but being troubled with some slumbring motion,

motion, awaked, and eſpying one ſo near her bed ſide, was ready to give a ſhriek, but with more regard noting his habit, ſhe knew him, ſhrowding herſelf from his ſight, until he entreated her to pardon his boldneſs, proteſting his intent was not to diſquiet her.

I am not diſquieted (quoth ſhe) now I know you, but I marvel I was not acquainted with your coming, it is Lanula's doings hath uſed me thus immodeſtly. I humbly beſeech you (quoth he) take no offence thereat, but pardon us both, the greateſt fault is mine, for which I am contented to abide any puniſhment. Your puniſhment (ſaid ſhe) cannot be great, your offence being done to me that loveth you more than my ſelf.

And if I have diſcover'd what modeſty will not permit,
The offence being done by you, pray pardon it

The ſight quoth he can procure no offence, for it hurteth not, therefore in ſeeing I committed no injury; but where there is mutual love, and conſent in love, there nothing can breed offence but diſloyalty, which is as far from me as impoſſibilities, then I can no way offend but in that, and in that I will never offend: All this may be granted (quoth ſhe) in you, but not in me; for I count it a great offence to be immodeſt, and nothing more contrary to perfect vertue.

You cannot offend (quoth he) in that to me, for having given your ſelf mine, why ſhould I not both ſee, touch, and enjoy you, the firſt being granted, the laſt cannot be denied? It is not the outward action that uniteth the heart, but the inward conſent. I deny you not (ſaid ſhe) all that I have is yours, by my own conſent and free gift, yet you muſt forbear poſſeſſion until the Wargain be confirmed before witneſſes; otherwiſe your Title is not good. Yes (ſaid he) my Title is better by your Gift than by a thouſand witneſſes; for if you deny, they cannot avail me, therefore ſince you cannot deny me intereſt, yield me poſſeſſion.

Theſe words were intermingled with many kiſſes and embraces, able to ſtir affection to the height; ſo that knowing his meaning by his words, ſhe ſaid: Dear Knight, I underſtand your meaning, which I will not, nor cannot grant, but in any thing elſe you ſhall command me, only I deſire and am reſolved to preſerve my Virginity without blemiſh; therefore good

Knight

Knight request not that, having so much as you cannot desire more, my Life, my Company, my Love, and all is at your disposition; only I challenge you as you are a Knight, not to blemish my Vertue,

Notwithstanding, he so much prevailed with her at last, that she gave her consent, he should the next night be joyned to her in marriage, by such means as she would compass, and then he should without denial attain his desire.

This contented him not, but he grew to such importunate requests, intermingled with such Oaths and Protestations, being such as no reasonable man would have demanded, and framing in himself such a kind of desperate behaviour, that she could not tell how to deny him, and at last calling Lanula, unto her, she whispered a few words in her ear, whereupon drawing the Curtains, she departed the Chamber.

Palian seeing that, put off his apparel, and laid himself down by her, folding her delicate body in his arms, with sweet embraces expressing both their loves, but she kept her word, for notwithstanding, he did what else he desired, yet she reserved her Virginity inviolable; adjuring him by so many entreaties for to leave that unattempted, often intermingling her words with such effusion of tears, that the hardest heart would have yielded unto her, promising, that if she did not compass her marriage the next night, that he should assuredly attain his desire, though she hazarded her life to accomplish it.

In these and such like speeches, the night was unawares to them over-past, and the necessity of the time forced his departure, that taking his leave of her with many ceremonious farewels, he apparelled himself, and left her to meditate on that which had past between them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

How *Montelion* discovered *Palian*'s deceit, and how he was in some sort revenged, hasting *Persicles* to depart.

IT chanced that morning that Montelion was early up, and being possessed with a troubled head, and a Lobe-sick heart, walked up and down the Garden, and in a melancholly dump seated himself down in an Arbour over against Praxentia's Lodging, even at the same time as Palian departed, who seeing one come privately from thence, secretly following him till he came to his Lodging. Montelion then began to think it was some Messenger, either sent from her to Palian, or returned with an answer of some Message he had delibered, or that it might be Palian himself, whom he resembled in proportion, but not in habit.

The day now growing aged he found out Persicles, with whom he kept company all that day, thinking indeed that it was Palian himself that he had seen, for that he had kept his Chamber most part of the day. When it grew towards night he disguised himself, and girding his sword to his side, he entred the Garden; and as he walked by the door, with purpose to take up his standing in the Arbor, Lanula was come down by that way to bring a Fryer in, who should secretly knit up the marriage, and espying one go by, she thought it was he that was appointed to come, called saying: who is there, Montelion? he hearing that, said, it is I. You come too soon (quoth she) the Fryer that shall marry you to Praxentia is not yet come, for whom I am now going. He was half amazed, but thinking to find out the truth, said: What shall I do then (quoth he:) Return and change your Apparel, for if you come in this she will be offended, for many troubled thoughts hath possessed her mind this day; she fell out with me wonderfully for bringing you in the last night, when she was in bed, and when she had me draw the curtains and be gone, I thought you would have pleased her, ere you parted: But faith tell me, was she not kind? had you not what you would have? Montelion blushing to hear her immodest Questions, made

no answer, nothing her until her flattering tongue had bewrayed all the mischief her self was guilty of. Well (quoth she) stay here till I am returned, and then you shall go with me, for I dare not let you in before.

Montelion wondring at this accident by the circumstance, that he had heard, assured himself that some man in his name had attained her love, which fretted his heart with such vexation, that he was ready to run mad with grief: but calling himself to remembrance, he said, you may save the labor, I have dealt with one to that effect who promised to meet me within this hour, return therefore, and my self will stay his coming. Lanula thought nothing, but went in, telling the Princess why she returned so soon. Montelion covering his face as privily as he could from being discovered, walked up and down by the door, and in short space he espied Palian coming, asked who was there, are you Montelion? I am said Palian. I am the Fryer (quoth he) that am appointed to marry you to Praxentia; with that he embraced him, desiring him to make no question, but with all speed to dispatch the thing he had undertaken. I will do it (said he) out of hand. Being both together come to the door, and by Lanula brought up into the Chamber, Praxentia embraced Palian, saying: Welcome my dear Knight Montelion, this joyful hour shall make us both happy, which I have with great desire wished for.

I cannot (quoth he) yield you more than hearty thanks, and vow by Heaven and Earth never to deal disloyally with you in thought, word, or deed, therefore according your pleasure let it be done. Montelion so well as he could counterfeited the Fryer, and desired a light: My friend (said he) it may discover us: shall I then wed (quoth he) I know not whom: Nay (said Lanula) never fear to be discovered, for on my life here is none suspecteth; with that she lighted a Candle, setting it far off on the Table; and presently he said to Praxentia, this is not Montelion, but some Villian that hath betrayed you, and discovering his face they both knew him. Her heart with sudden grief was ready to burst, and he with a sad countenance stood as one transformed, and Lanula with abundance of tears stood wringing her hands, and he with very shame stood as one bereft of sence; whilst

whilſt Montelion ſaid: What diſloyal and moſt diſhonourable dealing is this in a Prince, whoſe mind ſhould harbour nothing but vertue? can diſſimulation take ſuch deep root in a royal breſt? Then well may baſe born Peaſants be excuſed for barbarous and faithleſs dealing; unworthy to be ſo worthy of that name; Was there none to exerciſe your deteſted practice upon, but the Daughter of a King, and in the name of a ſtrange Knight? that by his deeds ſeeketh honor: What impiety can be compared to this? Indeed ſuch an Act deſireth obſcurity, therefore you did well to deny light, for were it day the Sun would bluſh, or withdraw his ſplendor amongſt the miſty Clouds to behold it. Well may he live, but for ever will he be hated, that ſeeketh to fulfil his content by ſuch diſloyal dealing.

Baſe fellow (quoth Palian) preſumeſt thou upon my lenity to abuſe me? I count it no diſhonor to win the love of ſo beautiful a Lady by any hazard: yet it grieveth me that I was compelled to name my ſelf after him I account my Inferiour. I (ſaid ſhe) you are ſuperiour in birth, but not in vertue. By Heaven (quoth *Montelion*) thou haſt ſo much diſhonored this Lady, and injured me, that thou art not worthy to live, and were it not to offend her ſacred eyes with ſlaughter, ſhe ſhould behold thy Maſſacre, with that he drew his Sword.

Nay good friend (quoth ſhe) ſtay thy hand, indeed it will offend me, therefore let him go, and live to my diſhonor and his ſhame; for I will not be guilty of his death. And I beſeech thee, as thou favoureſt vertue not to diſcloſe it to any, leſt hearing it ſpoken by others, it procureth my death; as for him I think ſhame will withhold him from blazing his own and my reproach, for Lanula, ſhe hath done me wrong againſt her will. For my part dear Lady (quoth Montelion) it ſhall never paſs my lips, whilſt Life doth laſt, for I ſo much abhor the fact, that I hate for to hear of it.

Palian ſeeing his policy diſcloſed, though it was now no time to recant, for he well perceived ſhe mortally hated him, he was ſo overcome, that he ſtood like a living creature transformed to a ſenſeleſs Picture, whilſt ſhe pulled from her neck a rich Jewel, and gave to Montelion in conſideration of his pains, withdrawing her from their company. Palian what with ſhame and grief

went from thence in a rage ready to run mad, spending his time in such anguish, studies, plots and devices, which way to win her love, that within short space he became so sick that all men expected his death.

Montelion casting off the affection he had entertained, with a conceit that Palian had dishonored her, (as he might well suppose by Lanula's speeches) hasted Persicles in search of Constantia, not once discovering the reason why he had altered his mind, resolving never to set his fancy upon Ladies beauty again, which did but disquiet the mind, and make it unapt to practice vertue, promising never to leave searching until he had found his Parents, and aid him in search of Constantia.

The prefixed day being come, they armed themselves, none knowing the intent of their departure but Piera. Taking their leave of the Emperor and Empress with great solemnity, the hearty love of thousands of Persians wishing them good success, many seeming dead with grief for their departure, who with their Lists, Turneys, and Triumphs, had delighted the eyes of all the beholders. Persicles was armed in black Armor, with all his furniture correspondent, and Montelion in Armor of silver, without any Device at all therein, with his Horse and furniture as white as Snow, that by their difference they might easily be known by all men,

CHAP. XXII

Of certain strange Adventures that befel *Persicles* and *Montelion*, by which they were parted. The conference that *Persicles* had with *Delatus*, which containeth the History of *Delatus*'s misfortunes. How *Persicles* by *Delatus*'s counsel returned into *Assyria*.

BEing without the City, and parted from all Company, they travelled towards Arabia, spending many daies without any adventure, and overpassing the tediousness of that travel, in conference of sundry matters, but especially Persicles decyphered the Favor, Proportion, Beauty and Countenance of Constantia, that Montelion might the better know her. With re-

dious

dious trabel, they arrived in a pleasant valley, through the midst whereof ran a most pleasant River, whose Christal streams ran with great swiftness, washing the pebble stones in the bottom so clear, that they might easily be discerned. Riding along by the Rivers side, they beheld afar off two Damosels all in white on Horse-back, crossing the Meadow with such swiftness, that they were soon out of sight. Montelion desiring to know what they were, desired Persicles to return, with that he spurred his Horse, who ran so swiftly, that the earth seemed to shake under him, riding a mile before he could overtake them, but so soon as they espied him, they turned back, and one of them said: as thou art a Knight, and favor the distress of wronged Ladies, pity us, and vouchsafe your aid to redeem our Mistress, who was even now taken from us by three monstrous Gyants: Fair Virgins (quoth) I profess Arms, and to my uttermost will assist you, else were I not worthy of the name of a Knight, therefore let me know her name. She is (said they) Daughter to Amphiador Duke of Ila, her name is Philothea; for Beauty, Vertue, Modesty, Shape, Courtesie, Humility, Temperance, Chastity, and Wisdom, not to be equalled, therefore the more to be pitied, and succoured in distress; we are posting back to bring this heavy News unto the Court, and whilst we stay here, she runs in further danger. Which way went they (said he) directly by the way we came (quoth they) whom we would have followed further, but that we durst not venture over the River after them; with that Montelion returned back, declaring to Persicles what he had heard. If report lie not (said Persicles) the Damosels have not flatteringly praised her, I have before this heard of her. Then both of them hasted to follow her, but passed the river with much danger of drowning. When they had rode two hours, they met with a Country-swain, running forward so fearfully as if he had been pursued: Fellow (said Persicles) what affrightest thou? O Sir (quoth he) I met with three of the hugest men that ever I beheld in my life, carrying a Lady that made great lamentation. Hearing this, they posted down the way that was beaten plain, at last the same parted into two waies, and being doubtful which of them to take, they concluded to part, embracing each other as if they should never meet again, Persicles on the right hand

hand, and Montelion on the left. On whose several Adventures strange accidents befel.

Perficles rode on with great swiftness not once setting eye on them for that way they went not: therefore he spent much labor in vain, until it grew to night, and then he thought it vain to seek them, but wandring about to seek some convenient place to rest in, but he could not, for those desarts were not inhabited. At last drawing nigh unto a Rocky hill, he might espy a glimmering light to shine through the hollow clifts thereof; and thitherwards he went, perceiving it to be some poor habitation, he alighted, tying his Horse to a bush, and knocking at the door, it opened of it self, and he espied an aged man sitting over a little fire very busie turning of roots, which he rosted; and casting up his eyes, and espying Perficles, said unto him: Come in good Knight, distress I know hath brought you hither, else you would not walk these Desarts so late. Pardon me good Father (quoth he) for this bold intrusion. You guess aright of my estate, for I have wandred out of my way, and sought long for some Habitation, but was frustrated, until I was brought hither by the light of your Candle. Sir (said the old man) you are welcom, and I wish I were able to comfort you in some good sort, but such as my poor habitation yieldeth, if you please to stay this night, shall be at your command: Neither are you the first man that hath been thus entertained by me, therefore disdain me not for my good will: Father (said he) I greatly accept your proffer, and thank you for this kindness that exceeds my desert, or means to requite it, and the rather I desire your company and conference, by reason I am but a stranger in this Countrey, and would gladly hear somewhat thereof by your report. Sir (said the Hermit) first sit down, and take such spare diet as my house affords, and then I will tell you what I can to satisfie you: Whereupon the Hermit thus began.

Sir, I shall first discover what I am, and the cause of my living in this obscure place, and withal, discover those things that you think are beyond my knowledge: For no want of misfortune or fear of being discovered, hath made me chuse this solitary life, but my own voluntary fancy which perswades me I can no way live with my unfortunate disposition: neither would

I

I habe you think I intend to fill your ears with idle prattle, or repetition of toyes, but as I intend to ease your heart of some of the care it possesseth; so I desire you by hearing my misfortune and aiding my estate, to ease me, or at least to comfort me with hope of your faithful assistance; for I know your Name Country cause of trabel, means of remedy, and your success hereafter, which I will declare unto you, when you habe heard out my Tragick story, which I cannot but utter first.

Perficles wondred to hear his speech, little thinking he could performe what he promised, but yet determining to try him, and desirous of comfort, he entreated him to proceed, for he was desirous to hear his discourse. Sir, (said the Hermit) my name in my flourishing estate was called *Delatus*, my Dignity and Dukedom of *Ila*, which I enjoyed many years in great quiet, being both enriched in the Gifts of Fortune and Nature; for in my youth I chanced to set my affection on the beauty of *Alsala*, being Daughter to a Gentleman of *Antiochia*, not for her possessions, but for her beauty, which surpassed all the Ladies of the South part of this Continent; I sued long, and at last obtained her consent, married her, and brought her into *Ila*, where I lived with her a year in great content, being in that space enriched with a Daughter naming her *Philotheta*, in her infancy shewing that more years would perform in her more exquisite beauty, which is the Virgin you now travel in search of.

Living in this blissful content, there chanced a Knight named *Amphidor* to take a view of my fair *Alsala*'s beauty, which at the first sight pierced so deep, that he was intangled therewith, laboured by all means to grow into familiarity, thereby to enjoy more fully her sight and company: Fortune and my self so favouring him, that I esteemed so well of his company, that I did think my self not well when he was from me: he on the other side, seeming so much to affect me, that I admired his kindness. All this time he insinuated himself into *Alsala*'s company, she also esteeming so honourably of him, that by reason of the love between him and me, and her little suspect of his disloyal dealing, she alwaies admitted him into her company, and used him so familiarly, that she made him privy to all her counsels. Notwithstanding all this, he durst

not

not ſhew love to her, ſeeing indeed her vertue to be ſuch, that he did think it impoſſible to attain it; thinking it better to live in ſilence, and enjoy her company, than by uttering his affection to be deprived of all comfort. Upon a time (as he did) there arrived at my Caſtle a no her Knight, named *Palleſus*, who in the ſame manner as he had done, ſuffered on *Aſala*'s beauty, and was admitted to mine and *Amphiador*'s company, both eſteeming well of him for many honourable qualities that he was endued withal; as little ſuſpecting *Amphiador*'s love as he did his, nor I, nor *Alſala* once think ng any ſuch matter, for that our kindneſs bred in us ſuch familiarity, as many paſſionate and amorous actions might be acted, and yet no way ſuſpected.

Thus did I live in great content ſome two years, ſpending my time in Hawking, Hunting, and other paſtimes, as void of diſquiet as heart could wiſh, thinking my ſelf happy in their kindneſs, but moſt in *Alſala*'s beauty; they with coloured courteſie ſeeming to live by enjoying my company and familiarity, and ſhe as much as I eſteeming them for their love: But at laſt this pleaſant Summer began to turn to Winter, and our ſweet content to diſcontent; for *Palleſus*'s love burſt into a flame, which he was unable to reſtrain, that in ſecret he gave *Alſala* knowledge thereof, which was as horrid to her hearing, as for one to hear that he hath drunk poyſon: but notwithſtanding, her mind being endued with vertue and courteſie, in kind ſort reproved him, wiſhing him not to proſecute any ſuch matter, for ſhe would never yield thereto; notwithſtanding her courteous denial bred in him no remorſe, but rather hope of comfort, that continually he followed his Suit, which bred much trouble in her mind, that whereas ſhe was before delightful and pleaſant, ſhe became ſo melancholy and ſad, that I admired at it, but I could not learn the cauſe thereof; thinking it had been ſome ſickneſs, rather than trouble of mind. Being long thus troubled with his love, ſhe began to deviſe how to be rid of it, that ſo it might not come to my knowledge; for her vertuous love made her loth to diſquiet me, relying upon *Amphiador*'s vertues, ſhe thought by his aſſiſtance to rid her ſelf of *Palleſus*, therefore on a time being with him in ſecret, ſhe told all the circumſtance to him, deſiring his counſel, and diſſwade *Palleſus* from doing me

ſuch

ſuch diſhonour, *Amphiador*'s heart was ſuddenly poſſeſt with a jealous conceit againſt the ſaid *Pallaſus*: but he meant by that means to attain his deſire, and coming to *Pallaſus* he told him what *Aiſela* had made him privy unto, not diſſwading him, but counſelling him to perſiſt therein, promiſing he would by all means he could further the ſame. *Pallaſus* was ſome what comforted therewith, and ſhe was more chearful, hoping by *Amphiador*'s means to be rid of his love.

Amphiador one day being alone with me in my Foreſt, firſt uſing many entreaties to me to be ſecret, and binding me by many Oaths not to declare it to any, he told me that *Pallaſus* did make love to *Aiſela*, and that it was likely ſhe would yield thereto, giving me notice that often times they met in ſecret, and withal, giving me counſel to note their glances and behaviours, and I ſhould find that to be true, which I leaſt thought of, proteſting that meer love to me in regard of my honour, and his own duty, bound him to diſcover it, which otherwiſe he would never have revealed: with this my mind was much diſquieted, but I would not too raſhly give credit to his ſpeeches, before I had obſerved their behaviour ſome time, which I found to be ſomewhat familiar, of deep affection on his part, but on hers with a contrary intent, leſt her countenance bewray his love to me, which ſhe knew would breed my diſquiet. By reaſon of *Amphiador*'s perſwaſion, who continually augmented my ſuſpition I then began to ſuſpect them, and grew to extream jealoulie, aſſuring my ſelf they dealt diſloyally with me, purpoſing to work revenge againſt them: but then he began to perſwade me not to condemn them without manifeſt proof, as much perſwading me not to think ſo, as before he had done to perſwade me thereto: nothing then could alter my mind, my vehement diſquiet would not ſuffer me to reſt, nor to find his deceit. One day being alone I complained againſt my hard fortune and her diſloyalty, and in the midſt of theſe complaints he found me out, intending by my overthrow to work his deſire. I ſeeing him near me, after ſome conference, I deſired him to counſel me the beſt way to ſalve theſe evils, to be aſſured of the truth, and to do it without my reproach or her ſcandal, for I am loath to accuſe her without juſt proof. If (ſaid he) I may then counſel you, thus would I

adviſe you to do; The King is now ſick, and hath ſent for many of his Nobles to come to him, ſay you alſo, that you have received Letters from him, and that you muſt three daies hence depart to the Court, by this you ſhall find out the truth thereof, and at the time of your departure deſire *Polleſus* to bear you company, which if he refuſe, you may then judge of him accordingly, my ſelf will then accompany you to my Caſtle, wherein you ſhall remain in ſecret a while, and I in a diſguiſe unknown to any, will return, and will carefully note their behaviour at all time to find the truth thereof. I liked well of his counſel, and followed the ſame, making my departure known to *Alſala*, who with a heavy heart lamented to hear of my abſence, which then (by reaſon of my ſuſpect) I eſteem'd to be diſſimulation: *Amphiador* in the mean time went to *Polleſus*, and told him by reaſon of ſome conceit or ſuſpition I had lately conceived, would carry him with me to the Court, and therefore willed him to be ablent at that inſtant. The time of my departure being come, I thought to find him, but he was gone, which augmented my ſuſpition to a reſolution, but intending to try the utmoſt of all, and truſting to *Amphiador*'s faithfulneſs, I went with him unto his Caſtle, ſtaying there three daies: In the mean time, (I thinking he had been returned to my Caſtle) he went to an Enchanter named *Penthraſus*; and brought him to my Caſtle, ſhewing him *Philotheta*, promiſing him, that if he would but work means to rid me away, ſo that I might never return, when ſhe came to years to procure her to conſent to his love. *Penthraſus* at the firſt ſight liked the proffer, and promiſed to undertake the ſame, taking a ſolemn Oath never to diſcover it. Now fearing leſt ſome other ſhould prevent him, and to avoid his Wives ſuſpition, who had great knowledge in Necromancy, and often by her skill croſſed his practices, and withal unwilling to be guilty of my blood; after I was delivered to him, he brought me to this place, caſting ſuch charms upon me, that I ſhall never be releaſed, and when he had done, he told of *Amphiador*'s practice againſt me. I then entreated him to releaſe me, promiſing to fulfil whatſoever *Amphiador* had promiſed him, but nothing could prevail, for he told me he had by a ſolemn oath bound him to perform, which he could not break, for if he did, by that he ſhould loſe the vertue of his Art. Then

did

did I lament my misfortunes with bitter exclaims, but he told me it was in vain, and so departed; here did I live many years past hope of all comfort, thinking to end my daies in this place without ever hearing of them again; but at last *Penthrasus* came to me again, rehearsing the sequel of this History following.

Amphiador being sure enough of me, returned to my Castle, and coming to *Alsala*, told her, that the day after I went from thence *Palesus* had set upon me with an ambush of men, and so slain me, telling the same with such protestations and probability of truth, that she could not chuse but believe him, counselling her in secret to apprehend him, and cast him in Prison. *Alsala* hearing this, had much ado to keep life within her, having scarce breath enough to command her servants to apprehend him, whilst *Amphiador* laboured with such as were about her to keep life in her.

The rumour of my death was soon spread abroad, and my servants believing the same; some posted to the Court, some searching for my body, none finding me alive nor dead, for which *Amphiador* had still an answer ready to satisfie any doubt. *Palesus* hearing that it was *Amphiador* accused him, and for no less matter than my death (as he might well) denied the same, and often entreated *Alsala* to let him be brought to his tryal. But being over-swayed by *Amphiador*'s perswasions, and being before troubled with his love, whereby he sought to dishonour me that was his friend, which bred a perswasion in her, that to attain that, he sought my life, and would give no credit to him, but he should die, and within few daies after, she apparelled her self, her Servants, and all her Attendants in mourning weeds, and departing to the Court craving justice of the King against *Palesus* for murdering me: The King told her she should have justice; whereupon *Palesus* was brought before the King, and there accused by *Amphiador*; he alledging all the false accusations he could, and the other still pleading his innocency, that in the end *Amphiador* desired the King to grant him a Combat against *Palesus*, which should end the doubt of all the controversie: so the King granted it, and appointed a day for the Tryal: in which violent combat, cruel fortune so ordered the issue, that *Palesus* was slain, and all men accounted him guilty, and me dead, yielding much honour to *Amphiador*, and the King in recompence

pence of his ſuppoſed loyalty to me, and for that I died without an Heir, created him Duke of *Ila*, yet reſerving the Living to *Alſida* during her life: this done, *Alida* returned towards *Ila* and *Amphiador* with her very ſore wounded, of whom ſhe had a ſpecial care, tending him as her ſelf for the love he had ſhewed her in becoming her Champion in revenge of my death. After he had recovered his wounds, he continued many daies with her, not once mentioning any love to her, ſeeming with her to lament my loſs: but all things in time wear out of mind, ſo did her ſorrow for me, and ſhe began to conceive well of him, which he perceiving did proſecute his love with ſuch ſucceſs, that in the end he married her: which when *Pembraſus* declared to me, it ſtruck my heart with deadly grief, then I deſired him to releaſe me from this miſery. Neither (ſaid *Pembraſus*) do I intend to claim the performance of *Amphiador*'s promiſe, for *Philetta* is fair, chaſt, and vertuous, neither will I reveal this ſecret to any but your ſelf; nor ſhall you depart from hence till the time of the Enchanted Tower be ended, built by *Helion*, in which he hath ſhut *Conſtantia* Daughter to the Emperor of *Perſia*, and betrothed wife to *Perſicles* King of *Aſſyria*, who ſhall be the firſt Knight that ſhall arrive in this place, neither ſhall the Enchantment be ended by any but the Son of *Perſicles* begotten of *Conſtantia*; for (quoth he) the date of my life is at an end, and at ſuch time as *Perſicles* arriveth here, will him to return into *Aſſyria* to eſtabliſh his Kingdom in peace; for it will be in vain for him to ſpend his daies in travel to redeem her, the finiſhing whereof muſt be by his own Son. When he had ſpoken theſe words he vaniſhed, appointing me to a certain bounds which I cannot paſs, nor any yet come into, but only your ſelf, which aſſureth me that you are *Perſicles*, and travel in ſearch of *Conſtantia*.

You have (ſaid Perſicles) filled my heart with fear, hope, and comfort the one ſtriving to over-maſter the other; fear, that the Enchanter diſſembled, for that I have as yet no Son, nor never ſhall have by Conſtantia; for ſhe being ſtill enchanted, how ſhall I attain her company? yet again, I am ſomewhat comforted that he could as well tell who ſhould finiſh the Enchantment he had made, as my coming to this place, for I am the moſt ſorlorn King of Aſſyria that ſhall never enjoy comfort till ſhe be relea-

releas'd, which doubt perswadeth me will neber be; for if I must now return into Assyria, how shall I hope to find comfort? Yet be of good comfort (quoth he) for hope hath preserved my life many years, assuring my self, that Pantrasus told me nothing but truth: why should you despair more than I, since both our comforts rests on her release. But according to his counsel travel no further, for it were in vain to do that which can yield no hope of comfort.

In doing so (said he) I shall dishonour my self, and leave my friend unkindly, whose deserts hath bound my life to require his love, who hath only for my sake undertaken to travel in search of Constantia, the cause of whose departure from me was in search of your Daughter Philothea, that is reputed to be Daughter to Amphiador, who was this day stollen from us, by three Giants: then he declared how they came to the knowledge thereof.

It did him good to hear that she was living, that he rejoyced greatly thereat; withal, enquiring of him what Knight that was who was gone in her rescue. Pericles then said, it were too tedious to make recital of him, for then I should rehearse the discourse of my misfortunes. Were it not troublesome (quoth the Duke) I would desire to hear them. To requite your kindness, (said he) I will rehearse the same, which yet I have kept from all men but Montelion: with that he declared all from the beginning of his first love to that hour, which when he heard, he wondred who that Knight Montelion should be.

The night being spent in this discourse, and bright Phœbus shining on the Desart, he knew not what was best, either to depart or stay; but at last being perswaded by Dolatus, he took his leave of him with many courteous farewels, and mounting himself on Horse-back, he departed directly towards the Kingdom of Assyria.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Combat *Montelion* fought against three Gyants: And how he rescued *Philotheta*, and what befel them in the Hermits Cell.

MOntelion being parted from Persicles, hasted with more than ordinary pace after Philotheta, and overtook them about the setting of the evening, running at the hindermost with so fierce a Carreer, that he overturned him with his heels upwards, and was charging so violently against the second, that had he not avoided the point of his Lance, he had seconded his fellow. Then he that was overthrown went towards Montelion, offering such a forcible blow at him, that had he not spurred his Steed to avoid him, he had either slain him or his Horse: But Montelion knowing it better to fight on foot than on Horseback, alighted; whilest the Gyant came towards him again, thinking at one blow to beat him in pieces, the other two seeing him on foot, went away laughing: but the Gyant missing his aim by reason of Montelion's nimbleness, was ready to turn about with the force of his blow; in which time Montelion lep'd within him and thrust his sword so far into his body that he fell down dead. The other seeing that, one of them came running back to rescue him, whom Montelion soon espied, being ready to receive him. The Gyant seeing his fellow dead thought at one blow to end Montelion's life, that he struk at him with all his force, but he avoided his blow not yet daring to come within him until he was somewhat out of breath, being furious for revenge, but more mad to miss so many blows, he struck so full and violently at Montelion that his massy Club stuck in the earth, and whilest he labored to pull it out Montelion struck him so full a blow on the arm, that he cut the same quite off, wherewith he gave such a groan that all the place rung with the noise thereof, running away as fast as he could towards Montelion's Horse whom he affrighted so much with his grisly and blustring approach, that he brake in sunder the reins of his bridle, and ran away with great swiftness: Montelion was exceedingly vexed for lack of his horse, not knowing for want of him what to do, and by reason of the

nights

nights approach he still pursued the Giant, keeping him in sight as long as he could, who at last he lost. Seeing himself so disappointed, and unhorsed he began to study what to do; at last being past hope of finding them or his Steed, by reason of the darkness of the night, he went wandring up and down to seek a place of rest, lest some wild Beast might devour him; coming to a Wood with a purpose to pass through the same, he heard the sound of a big voice, which made him stand still and listen, and with softly steps drawing thitherwards, he perceived it was the Giants, who did curse and ban him for crossing their journey. What shall we do (quoth one of them) shall we stay here or no? We shall wander I know not whither; A Plague upon that white Devil that haunted us; I am sure he is no man, for we are men, and one man should be as good in fight as another: but you two like Cowardly Slaves have suffered such a wretch to have the advantage of you. Hold thy prating (said the other) thou couldest have done no more than we: Thou needst not vex me, I am vexed enough with the loss of my arm, let us rest here till day, and then we will be gone, for he hath wrath enough to find his Horse. Philotheta was so affrighted with fear, that she lay like one in a Trance, to whom one of them said: Sweet Philotheta be not offended with me, for I have loved thee long, and long expected this happy hour to enjoy thee, be content to lodge on the cold earth one night for my sake, who hath left many a nights sleep for thine, neither shalt thou lie on the earth, for my body shall be thy bed, whilst my arms embrace thee; then did he take her in his arms, bestowing many a loathsome kiss upon her, but she for fear durst not cry out. Montelion stood and heard all their unreverent usage, wishing it were day, that he might revenge their disloyalty. They had not lain long, but first one, and then another fell fast asleep, which he knew by their snoring, thinking it no discredit to slaughter such Miscreants that delighted in no Knightly action, but in wrong and oppression: and drawing near unto them, Philotheta espyed him, and by reason of his white Armor knew him; desirous she was to speak to him, but being fearful to awake her keeper with-held her, and yet she knew the care of her affright hindred him from revenge, at last so boldly as she durst she lifted up her hand and beckoned Montelion to her,

and

and pointing to the Spaine. He understanding her meaning, thrust his sword into him, that had her folded in his armes, who striving with the pangs, she had the liberty to leap from him, roaring forth such a groan as all the Wood sounded therewith, and his fellow being half amazed, started up ready to run away, but Montelion's Sword overtook his hindermost Leg, at one blow he cut in sunder the sinews, and he fell down holding up his hands for mercy, but with the next blow he pierced his braines, so that he dyed a most miserable death.

The other had received no mortal wound, for the point of his Sword lighting upon one of his Ribs, was staied from ending his life, who whilst Montelion was slaughtering the other, had recovered his Staff, bending a full blow at Montelion, who by good fortune and Philotheta's shrike turned about, and espying the same coming, broke half the force, and running in withal ran his Sword quite up his body, but with the bruise he received fell down himself in a trance.

Philotheta thinking he had been dead, run to him with speed, striving with her tender hand to unbuckle his beaver, and unlace his Helmet to give him breath; which though long, yet at last she attained, but seeing him bereft of his senses, her lamentations were such as would have turned revenge into remorse, and those senceless Trees into pity, and the birds hearing her moan, left off their sweet notes to listen to her mournful plaints, which she began after this manner: Ay me, what will now become of me? how shall I escape further misery? here I am left alone ready to be devoured of wild Beasts; yet what need I fear any mischief, when so great misery is befallen me, as greater cannot be. Her laments conducted the steps of an aged Hermit that dwelt in those woods, to the place where she lay weeping over Montelion, and being half affrighted, said; If thou art a man pity me, help me to revive this knight; If thou hast a Ghost, think not to affright me for I am already full of fear and if thou hast neither then tell me what thou art. Damosel (said he) fear not for I am a living creature as thou art, I pity thy distress, and will do my best to help you: And kneeling down by Montelion, rubbing his temples, and laying his hand upon his breast, felt some sign of life in him, seeking for an herb, which presently he found,

he

he bruised the same, letting the juice fall into his nostrils, with the vertue whereof his vital sences returned to their former operations and his eyes received their sight. With that, rising himself upon his arm he said: I perceive I have troubled you, and (as it were half ashamed of himself) he desired her not to be disquieted at his misfortunes. Polinarta's heart rejoyced to see him revived, not so well knowing what to say, now he was revived as when he was in his trance: but her vertue and his desert constraining her, she could do no less than utter these speeches: Sir Knight, your courtesie being so far beyond my desert, bindeth me to yield you thanks, and thanks is an unsufficient requital for your pains: Although I know you not, nor never saw you until this day, yet your valor and courtesie in delivering me from captivity, hath bound me to become grateful, and deserveth more recompence than I am able to yield. Lady (said Montelion) the Heavens have assisted you, not my valor, which I have attempted without expectation of recompence; if you think well of my pains, it is all the reward I crave.

The old Hermit perceiving some strange accident had brought them thither, desired them, (Montelion being very sore bruised, and we much affrighted and disquieted) to accept of his Cell, to repose in, until they could take better order for their safety. Montelion thanking him saying: he was pleased, so it liked the Lady: with that they began to go; but Montelion by reason of his sore bruise, with much ado could stand. The Hermit taking him by the arm supported him, whilst he with grief that his misfortunes had brought him to such a low estate said: It ill becometh youth to be supported by age, but no man can prevent destiny. Polinarta offered to lend him an arm, but he desired her not to trouble her self. Sir (said the Hermit) refuse not her courtesie, for in time of need it is not good to be too curious. With that she lent him her arm, but he took her hand, and that he thought as much boldness as it was a trouble, striving against the weakness he had received by his bruise, to go upright; she likewise wondred that nature had wrought in her such a familiar regard towards him she knew not; often accusing her self of lightness, and blushing when he grasped her tender hand that with exceeding fear, and fancies striving, moistened his palms; thinking with

ber self: now is my estate altered, that to day was free from care, now suddenly brought to bondage, and from bondage to this disquiet, and all in a moment: I am now like one that am content with misery; and yet discontented with that content: I could wish my self from hence, and yet were I gone, I should wish my self here again, because I desire this Knights welfare, and yet me thinks I should not be too familiar, and yet I know he hath deserved more courtesie than I can proffer. Many such thoughts possest her fancy, that and other things, for her part shortning the way to the Cell, where being arrived, the Hermit gave Montelion a portion of commixed Drugs, which comforted him greatly, and Philotheta a cup of Grecish Wine, which refreshed and quelled her affrighted heart. There was no light in the Room, therefore as yet, neither of them had seen each other: Montelion wished the day might appear that he might behold her beauty, and she, that she might behold whether his person were agreeable to his prowess; and the Hermit desirous to see what guests he had entertained. Seeing them both silent, the one abstained for grief the other for modesty, after he had seated them on soft Rushes, he said: As it seems to me you are strangers one to another, which makes me desirous to know what accident hath befallen you: Father (said he) indeed we are so, for as yet I never saw this Ladies beauty, yet I know her Name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of [illegible], which knowledge I got by this means: As I and another Knight were travelling in search of a Lady who hath been long time missing, we chanced to espy two Damosels clad in white, passing us with great speed with whom I had conference, and they told me, that this Lady was taken away from them by three Giants; I returned to my friend with this news, and we both posted after them until at a crosse-way we parted, that if they went either way we should overtake them, but it was my good fortune to light on them, and by their deaths to free the Lady, thinking my valour well bestowed, to redeem her from their treachery.

Philotheta refrained to speak, and only thanked him, fearing she should seem more courteous than modesty would permit, or more coy than vertue required. Sir, (said the Hermit) I know these Giants, and the manner of their life to be most inhumane and wicked,

wicked, whose habitation is not far off in the Desart of *Arabia*; by whose death this Country is freed from much outrage, which they daily committed. Sir (said Montelion) I pray what Country is this? It is Arabia (quoth he) Doth not Helion reign as King here? Sir (replied he) he did reign as King: but whether he is now living or no it is doubtful: some say he is Enchanted in a Tower he built himself, situate not far off; from whence he cannot be released until the Enchantment be ended, which many Knights of strange Countrys have adventured, but none can finish; the cause of building thereof, no man as yet can tell. Philotheta having heard before thereof, and wearied with that dayes travel, whilst they were in communication, fell asleep, which Montelion perceiving, ceased conference till morning, being unwilling to wake her with their noise. The first that awaked was the Hermit, who went to gather certain Herbs, leaving them both sleeping, who both at once awaked, at the first, blushing at each others sight, he wondring at her exceeding beauty, and she at his exquisite person; he comparing the Damosels report of her beauty and her other gifts thereto, which he supposed beyond conceit, and she comparing his valor to his youth, and his courtesie with both, thought her eye never beheld his equal, standing as it were enchanted with each other, neither being able to withhold their eyes from each other, but noting each others behaviour, until Montelion arose, and she did the like, he first breaking silence, said: Fair Lady, now that the Sun hath banished the misty Clouds of the Night, you need not fear any mishap, for your enemies being dead, I think there is none living of so inhumane a disposition, as would disquiet you; for my self my life, and all I have resteth at your command. Sir Knight (said she) I thank you for your kindness past, and now proffered, which hath rid me from that I was in, and out of fear of other mishaps to come, for your vertue hath authority against any wicked action. Before any further speeches past, the Hermit came, bringing in his hand the Herbs he had gathered, some of which he stamped and strained, giving it Montelion to drink, others he boiled on the fire, making thereof a dainty dish, which when they had tasted, the Hermit said: Though I know you find your self of sufficient strength, yet by my counsel travel not this

day for you may impair your health, my self, if it pleaseth this Lady, will send a Messenger to him to report her safety. Not so (quoth Montelion) my self, if it please her to accept of my service I will attend her thither, and that presently. Sir (quoth she) I would not have you endanger your health for my sake that am in safety, till such time as you are perfectly recovered. Then said the Hermit, you shall not in this place want any thing; nor fear disquiet for here hath security dwelt many years, my self being glad that my poor Cell can yield you any content. Then he went forth to get provision, leading them together in his Cell, whose eyes were filled with a surfeiting surbey of each others perfections. Her beauty being such as might not be equalled to any, and his proportion, besides his youths beauty, and other comelines of such form as would please any Ladies eye: which blew conduced an instinct of love in each others heart, where it settled in that vertuous Harbor with such constancy, that it was impossible to be removed, neither dreaming each other so fortunate as to agree in such a sympathy of love, he thinking he should not love, and she perswaded her self that he had settled his love upon that Lady he went in search of; he not knowing which way to frame his suit on so small acquaintance, nor she how to shew him favor without further tryal.

Philoclea breaking silence, with a heavy sigh: zed from the depth of meditation, he took occasion to say: Lady, that sigh betrayeth some disquiet of mind that molesteth you, the occasion whereof my small acquaintance and unworthiness to be so bold, hindreth me from asking, but if you would yield me such favor, as to impart your secrets to me, I should prove so faithful and diligent to please you, that you would not condemn my willingness, though my ability for my heart wisheth my tongue to utter that which my fancy perswades me from, not for that they disagree, but for that my heart harboreth that which my fancy binds me not to utter, because I fear you will not believe it: and yet you might believe if it were of more antiquity; for it is commonly holden for truth, that all things of antiquity are permanent, but never would have been, if they had not first begun in youth: youth being the first foundation, the foundation is then constant, then things though young of growth contain constancy, which being

being cherished grow to perfection: so Lady, if I might without your misconceit, discover the constant zeal of your perfections that is rooted in my heart; and find some sparks of your gentle favor to comfort it, it would grow to that settled resolution that nothing should remove it, but if in the first spring it be blasted with dis favor, it will then spread it self into all parts of my senses, procuring every part of me until it be cherished with your kindness, I cannot protest, vow, or swear, that I have loved long, yet if your suspect conceit not the truth of my well meaning words into distrust, I durst protest, vow, and swear that love to your perfections is settled in my heart, & nothing can remove it.

Sir (said she) should I credit your words, or impute my secrets to you, it might be counted too much credulity; yet without blame I might, relying upon your vertues; or should I grant it were as you say, that love began in a moment, being the root is the substance, and therefore permanent; yet how should you think of me, if on so small probability I should thank you for your good will, and accept thereof, not measuring me by your self if you are constant, but measuring me by unconstancy, you would judge me but light, as I may judge your words of course: yet so much good will as may grow upon so small acquaintance I bear you measuring the same by your own; for if you find cause to love me, I have more cause to thank you for your love, that I have received good by you: but neither esteem me light for being so familiar, or easily to be won because I am courteous, for should I be coy, you would count me unmannerly, and not worthy to be affected as I have been by you.

Lady (quoth Montelion) should I harbour a thought that might impeach the least tittle of your compleat Vertue I were worthy to be hated; for I know that truth is plain, and needeth no coloured phrases of curtosity, which animateth me to enter into this bold conference with you; not framing my words of course but of true devotion; trusting that your vertue will pardon my boldness and your courteous censure my meaning aright, for I find in my self an unwonted alteration (which desire to be gratious in your sight hath bred in me (nature, nor Art framing it) which I neither know how to manifest, nor dare, by reason of this small acquaintance, though my soul knoweth my hearts

purity

purity and consent thereunto fearing to be misconceived of you, but if you will vouchsafe to make tryal of me, and grant me but to be your Servant, in time to be censured and tried according to my truth. I shall account my self most fortunate, and yet Hope may be the Anchor of my comfort, one day to be gracious in your sight. Sir (said she) How could I but blame my self if I should yield you any other favour than for your late pains, which shall bind me to requite it to my power; but Love being another subject, how should I give you any credit being a stranger, altogether unknown to me? Lady (said he) you may do it if your gentle heart will yield thereunto though I am both a stranger, & to my self unknown for that I am you can witness, but who are my Parents, the Heavens have concealed; my name, if you ever heard of, is Montelion, my cause of coming into this Country was with Pericles King of Assyria, in search of Constantia Daughter to the Emperor of Persia his betrothed Wife, by misfortune lost many years since. All that I know of my self I have told you, and would I had never known my self, unless you favour me. Philotheta remembred that Amphiador in reciting the Wars between Pericles and the King of Armenia, had made ample report of his valour, so much the more esteeming him, yet she concealed the same, thinking though he were never so valiant, yet he might be unconstant, making him this answer. Sir, because you shall not accuse me of discourtesie, I will not deny your suit, nor in any respect grant it, till more convenient time to make trial thereof; Neither shall you name your self my Servant, for you have deserved to be better rewarded, which hereafter you shall find. Lady (quoth he) only one favour absolutely granted, would now more comfort my heart than many in suspence, not that I misdoubt your performance, but that long lingring pain in the mean time will pinch my heart, therefore without misdoubt of truth, gratitude, and constancy, enrich me but with one, though the least comfortable answer. Sir (qd. she) what in vertue I can grant, I will yield you, though you may account me already Prodigal in favour, and gentle in reply; yet should I be ungrateful you may blame me, or too prolix you may condemn me, but as much good will as in so short time may be, I bear you, and you shall find me perform, for my heart would never

neber ſuffer till this, to conceibe ſo well of any as I do of you. In urging me further, you will make me miſtruſt your conſideration of my late miſfortune, rather willing me to regard my return to my Parents: But you may ſee how my vertues have ouer maſtered my miſtruſt, and a good opinion of you have made me truſt my ſelf in your cuſtody.

CHAP. XXIV

How *Amphiador* arrived at the Cell, and of the fear *Philotheta* was in. The diſpleaſure that aroſe between *Montelion* and *Amphiador*, and of *Philotheta*'s ſtrange departure.

WHen he had ended theſe words, the Hermit came in, which brake off their communication, telling him that Amphiador with many followers were entred the Wood where the Giants lay dead. Philotheta then thought all care paſt; but remembring ſhe muſt part from Montelion, her heart fainted with grief; and ſhe was exceedingly troubled: For ſhe knew well that Amphiador was rude and ſuſpitious, that he would not thank him, nor inuite him to his Caſtle: he having formerly diſgraced others that ſought her Loue. Montelion on the other ſide ſtudied what means to uſe to enioy her company; and yet he thought it a diſhonour to him to follow Loue, and leaue Perſicles in ſearch for Conſtantia, and the knowledge of his Parents. But to rid them both out of their troubled thoughts, there entred three Knights in green Armour, and without ſpeaking a word, two of them took Philotheta and handed her forth of the Cell. Montelion ſtarting up drew his Sword, and followed to reſcue her, but the third without ſpeaking, ſtruck at him, wherewith he began a cruel Combat. At laſt the Green knight ſaid: thou ſtriueſt in vain ſhe is paſt recouery. With that Montelion looking about, ſaw them quite out of his ſight, marvelling they could ſo ſuddenly conuey her thence. If thou wilt find her (quoth he) thou muſt ſeek her amongſt the Heſperian Nymphs; which ſaid, he rode away ſo ſwiftly, that Montelion did think it in vain to follow him. By this time Amphiador and his company was come to him, amongſt whom he eſpied one leading his

his Steed, unto whom he went, and said: Sir, this is my Steed I pray you deliver him to me. The fellow denying him, he struck him a good blow with his fist, and overthrew him. Amphiador taking that said: What art thou that so boldly takest my servant? Montelion being vexed with the loss of Polotheta, answered, I will not tell thee, Amphiador being likewise vexed at his roughness, said no more but drew his sword and struck at him. Montelion thought to revenge it, but suddenly remembred himself, said: Wert thou not Father to Polotheta, I would make thee repent thy self. Amphiador hearing him name Polotheta would have spoke to him again; but Montelion mounting his Steed, rode away.

The Hermit seeing them at such variance, came to Amphiador, giving him knowledge of all that had happened: But he thinking it was some coloured excuse, for her escape, caused his servants to bind him, intending by tortures to make him confess more than he could. Montelion remembring himself, when he had rode a good way, how ungratefull he had left his kind Host the Hermit, returned to give him thanks, which he had no sooner done, but he found him bound amongst Amphiador his men, which vexed him so much, that he drew his sword again, and set upon them, wounding some, and killing others, that therewith Amphiador drew his Sword and struck at him again. By Heaven (quoth Montelion) strike me the third time, and thou dies. Notwithstanding his words, Amphiador vext for the death of his Servants, struck him again; whereupon Montelion not only defended himself; but offended him so much, that he sore wounded him; and had not his servants with some of their lives born off some blows, he had ended his life: but notwithstanding all their endeavours, he left him in such a miserable condition, that his servants had much ado to keep life in him until they brought him home.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

How *Montelion* in his travel arrived at the Bower of the *Hesperian* Nymphs; how every one of them gave him a several gift, and how they named him *Knight of the ORACLE*.

HAving freed the Hermit, and yielded him many thanks for his kindness, he departed with so heavy a heart, that he could scarce speak for grief; travelling he knew not whither, having so many occasions of care, he knew not what to do, nor which way to direct his steps. All the rest of that day he rode forth in this disconsolate sort, until it grew to be Night, neither caring for Meat nor Lodging; but turning his Horse loose to feed, he laid himself down under an Oak, whose spreading branches were as a large Canopy over his head, clogged with so many cares, that his heart was dulled with their confusion, and his senses so over-grown with conceit, that they rocked him into a deep sleep, in the midst whereof he suddenly awaked, and being called by a Damosel that appeared unto him, who standing before him, said: Sir Knight, arise and follow me. He marvelling what she should be, arose and followed her, she leading him the way (as he thought) through many by-paths, and cross-ways, Hills, Dales, and Woods, until the Sun arose, then banishing out of his sight, she left him in the midst of a pleasant green Meadow beautified with all sorts of fresh blown Flowers, whose beauty delighted the eye, and sweet smell affected the senses, and looking about him he espyed it encompassed with Springs, Trees, Groves; and in the midst an Arbor of blowing Roses, made with such art, that he admired the same, and the floor strewed with rushes, and all sorts of flowers: He stood a while in admiration, and casting his eye aside, he espyed a Table with these Verses written thereon.

What e're thou art that shall behold this writ,
Abstain from coming into this sacred place.
A company of comely Nymphs here sit,
That rule the *Hesperian* Oracle of Grace:

Be not too bold, least thou repent too late
Thy rash attempt, and hard Divining Fate.

which when he had read, he fell in a deep study, arguing their ambiguity, then suddenly he heard the sound of most sweet Musick drawing near him, and turning about, he espied a Troop of Damosels attyred in most rich Ornaments, with Garlands of Roses, mixed with others coloured Flowers upon their Heads, some playing upon Instruments, others having in their hands a Bow, and at their back a sheaf of the Arrows: Amongst them there was three taller, more beautiful, and richly adorned than the rest, wearing Crowns of Palm; amongst whom he espyed the Damosel that brought him thither, which made him with more boldness stay their coming.

They passed by him continuing their Melody, until they came within their Pavilion: then two of them came forth, saluting him with courteous and gentle behaviour, leading him to the Pavilion, until he came to the place where they were all seated, and the three chief in the midst, Montelion disarmed his head, did them reverence on his knee, and then presently he heard a voice uttering these speeches:

Most noble Knight, The Nymphs of the Hesperian Oracle pitying thy care and troubles, have brought thee hither to comfort thee with our assistance: unto which place never any man was yet admitted, therefore reveal not to any what thou hast seen: with thy Sword maintain their Honor, and name thy self Knight of the Oracle: Thy parentage is Noble, thy Father not knowing he hath a Son, and your Mother not thinking to see either Father or Son: Thy fortune shall be good, thy misfortune great, that which thou lovest best shall trouble thee most, and what thou thinkest thy self nearest, thou shalt be farthest off, thy professed friends, thy greatest foes: Thou wert begotten in Persia, born in Arabia, and brought up in Assyria. Be constant in Love, true to thy friends, patient in misery, and lowly in prosperity; Farewel, and be both happy and fortunate. The voice ceasing, the Nymphs came round about him, one ungirding his Sword, another unlacing his Helmet, and the third unbuckling his Armor, other unlacing of his Gantlets, and every one busie to disarm him; this done, one of the chiefest of them presented him with

with a moſt curious rich Armor, wrought of the beſt and pureſt Lydian ſteel, enameled all over with green, and beſet with Diamonds, Saphires, Jaſpers, and Rubies, the like for ſtrength and richneſs never Knight poſſeſſed, then the ſecond gave him a Shield agreeable thereto, with this Device thereon. A Knight kneeling, encompaſſed with Nymphs Crowning him with a Wreath of Roſes, and underneath theſe words written in Letters of Gold, The Knight of the Oracle. The third preſented him with a rich Sword, which he girded to his ſide, another a pair of Gantlets, another a Plume, another a Spear, another a pair of Spurs, and every one ſomething to expreſs their kindneſs. When he was thus adorned, which made him moſt beautiful to behold, every one of them gave him a courteous farewel, and departed again the ſame way they came from the Grove. Then the Damoſel that brought him thither came to him, and ſaid: Sir Knight, The Ladies of this Oracle, prizing the hard adventures you are to undertake, have beſtowed theſe Arms on you, which ſhall oftentimes preſerve your life; and have honored you ſo much as to chuſe you for their Knight; they have alſo appointed me to bring you to the place where I found you, therefore let us depart, my ſelf will give you a Horſe, whoſe equal for goodneſs cannot be had: which ſaid, ſhe led the way, and he followed after, until they came to the Caſtle, into which the Damoſel entred, willing him to ſtay till ſhe returned leading in her hand a Horſe black of colour, but of ſuch a goodly proportion that his eyes never beheld the like before, and mounting himſelf, the Damoſel ſaid unto him: Knight of the Oracle, farewel, proſper and be fortunate; which ſhe had no ſooner ſpoken, but preſently ſhe vaniſhed from his ſight, before he could have reſpight to give her thanks for her courteſie: being parted from her he entred into theſe Meditations, which thorned the way as he rode along.

I have loſt the Noble Knight Perſicles, who by this time accuſeth me of diſcourteſie, for not finding him out; how can I do that when I have loſt my ſelf and Philoclea, and in her my eſſence, being a ſubſtance? which of theſe are deareſt to me I know not, my ſelf I love by nature him for his honor and her by affection: which then ſhould I go in ſtarch of, ſince they are both ſo dear

unto me, as that I think my self departed of comfort by missing them; my estate also is uncertain, and the place where to find them so doubtful, that I cannot assure my self of confidence in either, but must take my fortune as it falleth, and arm my self with patience to endure the hardest tryal of extreams: Then he began to study which way to travel, being as ignorant of the place where Philotheta was, as unacquainted in those ways. Riding along in these solitary dumps, he at last lighted in a plain fair beaten path, in the furrows of whose dust he might perceive the footing of Horses that had newly gone that way, which put him in comfort, that it would not be long before he should find some company.

He had not rode an hour, but he chanced to enter a way that ascended a high Mountain, whose lofty top discovered to his eye the fair Turrets of the Enchanted Tower, which glistered as if they had been framed of massy Gold, which drave him into an admiration: and viewing well the situation thereof, he discerned the Valleys round about over-spread with Tents, as if it had been encompassed with an host of Enemies; and forsaking the gallant prospect, he intended to travel thither to know the cause of that assembly, making the more hast, for that it grew towards night: e're he could attain thither it waxed dark, therefore for that night he took his lodging under the covert of a Tuft of Trees, pleasantly seated in the midst of a green Meadow.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the conference between *Philotheta* and *Constantia* in *Perabraso*'s Palace.

The History hath long discontinued to speak of Constantia that remained Enchanted, and Helion that lay there enthralled in great misery, rightly rewarded for his treacherous dealing. Her eyes continually shed tears for the absence of Persicles, on whom she continually meditated, resolving that nothing but death should abolish his remembrance, that had not the Enchantress comforted her with promises of her release, the extremity of her sorrow had ended her life; withal, thinking

that

that Perſicles and her young Son might both be in ſafety, and ſhe by no means hear thereof which edged ſome comfort to her heavy Heart. The Enchantreſs would often entreat her to behold the valiant adventures of noble Knights that hazarded their own perſons in great peril to attain her love, and in private combats amongſt themſelves, with whom they were deeply affected only with the ſight of her Picture; but ſhe ſtill refuſed it, accounting it no pleaſure to her to ſee their misfortune, who ſpent their labour in vain; for in the continuance of ſo many years as ſhe had been there incloſed, the fame of her beauty was ſpread into moſt parts of thoſe Countreys thereabouts, and many thouſand worthy Knights had been there to try their fortunes, but all failed; the recital whereof would be too tedious, but many of them lay there impriſoned by the Enchantreſs, who being now in deſpair of her own ſafety, thought to bring all to miſery as well as her ſelf.

At the ſame time that Philotheta was carried from Montelion in the Hermits Cell, Conſtantia remained in ſuch extremity of ſorrow, that had not Ila wrought that device to bring Philotheta thither to accompany her, it would have been impoſſible her ſenſes could have overcome the extremity of the paſſion that tormented her but ſitting alone in a dark corner, ſhe uttered ſuch lamentations as would have turned the hardeſt heart of a cruel Tyrant into remorſe: but when ſhe eſpied Ila entred, and with her ſo beautiful a Damoſel, with cheeks bedewed with Chriſtal tears that in abundance trickled down from her eyes, with that objects left her own laments to pity hers, and ſeeing them draw nigh her, ſhe aroſe after a ſad ſort ſaluting their approach. Ila without ſpeaking a word to either, left them together, and although they were women, yet they greatly admired each others beauty, the one thinking the other to excel all; and yet had they but beheld their own perfections, they would have found them ſuch, that they might inwardly have conceited as well of themſelves, as they did of the outward object.

Conſtantia being more familiar with ſorrow than Philotheta was, firſt broke ſilence, ſaying: Lady, I perceive by your tears, that conſtraint (not conſent) did bring you to this place, beautiful to the eye, but filled with diſcontents, which long experience

rence hath taught me: Therefore if you want a companion in care accept of my company, but if you seek for comfort abandon me, for my onelest solace is sorrow, and my thoughts and meditations are nothing but discontent. I have not (said Palothera) been long subject to this misfortune, but being now plunged therein I know not how to release my self, or how to shun the same: Neither knowing who is the cause thereof where I am, or when I shall be released my sorrow being such, may well entertain a sorrowful companion, accepting your proffered kindness with hearty thanks. Lady (said Constantia) as you have chose me your company, so let me know what misfortune hath brought you hither, which will shorten some of the tedious time we are like to over-pass in this place: which done, you shall know to whom you have imparted your secrets, which recital will be tedious. Palothera sitting down by her, uttered these speeches: My name is Palothera, Daughter in Law to Amphiadus: and as I was walking in my Fathers Garden, upon what pretence I know not, three Gyants surprized me, by force carrying me thence, none to my knowledge seeing their cruelty. When they had travelled with me till it was late, a Knight armed all in white, gallantly mounted, came to my rescue, and entred combate with one of them, his valiant heart not refusing to cope with them all three: but one of them (thinking himself too strong for him) stayed behind and fought him, the other two hasting me away; but in short space one of them ran back to rescue his fellow; but he suddenly returned with the loss of an Arm: Then they haled me forwards with a violent force, until they came to the midst of a Wood, where they meant to stay all that night. This Knight, directed by fortune, alighted on the place where they lay, and by his valor and policy slew them both, yet was so sore hurt himself, that he lay breathless on the earth, which afflicted my heart with sorrow fearing his death, for I could not recover him with my lamentations, therefore accounted it more misfortune to be the cause of so worthy a Knights death, than if I had still been Prisoner to those Monsters. The Heavens favoring my sorrows, and his mishap, directed an old Hermit to the place, who with juyce of certain herbs recovered him, and with my weak assistance brought him to his Cell, within short space

curing

ering him: in which time I noted every part of his perfections, and found them such, as I want skill to decipher, comparing thereto his behaviour which did a perswasion in me that as he was valiant, so he was vertuous, and as he excelled all that ever I beheld in person, so he did in courtesie; much conference past between us, which I omit, the subject whereof was love, which he vowed to be as constant in him, though new begun, as it was in any by long continuance: amongst the rest of his speeches he told me he knew not his Parents: His name was Mometon, the cause of his travel was in search of a Lady named Constantia, betrothed Wife to Pericles King of Assyria, who parted from him that day he rescued me in Arabia. Constantia hearing such good news of the safety of Pericles, could not contain her self from bewraying what she was, but taking Philoneta by the Hand said: Dear Lady, this news addeth much comfort to my despairing Heart: I am that unfortunate Constantia, that till this hour have despaired of ever seeing that Noble King again, accounting my self so much bound to you, for being the Reporter of this welcome news, that I protest my self your everlasting friend, assuring you that if the worthy Knight that rescued you be companion with Pericles, he is endued with all Heroick qualities; but pray tell me out the rest. The worthy Knights speeches (said she) wrought so effectually with me, that I could have been content to have lived there for ever with him: In the end the Hermit brought in the news that Amphiador was heard by in my search: at which news I was very glad, yet also displeased, well knowing that his rude behaviour would not suffer him to use him kindly: whilst I was in this thought, three Knights in green Armor entred the Cell, two of them without speaking a word, by force carrying me away, whilest the third staied the Knight in Combat, who followed hastily to rescue me: but on a sudden before I could bethink me what they should be: I was within this Garden, where I met her that brought me unto you, who bad me fear nothing, for here I should abide in safety. With that a flood of tears gushed from her eyes, that it stopped the passage of her speech, turning the same into silence. Lady (qd. Constantia) to add more care to my heart will over-whelm it with grief, therefore I will omit the relation of my Tragedy till

till another time, neither fearing nor fearing care, now I hear of my Lords safety, who will set me at liberty from the thraldom I have endured almost twenty years. He coming to them brake off their conference; after supper conveying them into a Chamber, where they both lay, continuing some days in conference of their estate.

CHAP. XXVII.

How *Montelion* (*Knight of the Oracle*) arrived at the Enchanted Tower called *Perthesus Palace*; and of the controversies that fell between him and the Knights that came to try the Adventures.

EArly the next morning the Knight of the Oracle having lodged all night in the Wood, mounted his Steed with a desire to know whose Tents those were, and what Tower they had encompassed; he had not rode half an hour, but he approached near unto them passing amongst them without stay. Because he met none to confer withal he drew towards the entrance of the Bridge where Constantia's Picture hung, which when he beheld it, he judged by the outward shew, what perfections were adherent to the Lady who was owner thereof thereby calling to remembrance Philotheta's perfections, which in his conceit far surpassed that, but yet the spell that Ila had cast thereon did work so with him, that had not the Vertue of his Armor and other gifts the Nymphs had bestowed on him (which had power against all enchantments) prevailed, he had surely doted thereon: when he had read the Verses, an earnest desire possessed his heart to redaim the Lady; but neither regarding danger, or omitting opportunity, he took the Horn and winded the same, the sound thereof made many Knights to start from their Tents, being but even then up and newly armed. The first that was mounted and came to the Bridge, was a noble Knight of Parthia named Manon, who calling to the Knight of the Oracle, said: Sir Knight enter no further before you know whom thou hast offended by thy bold intrusion: He hearing his words, turned his Steed, saying:

saying; if I have offended, it is more then I know, yet I am resolved to try the Adventure whosoever says no. Thy Strangeness (said Menon) doth privilege thee, because thou knowest not what is included amongst the Knights here assembled. Sir (quoth he) whatsoever agreeth to the Law of Arms I yield to, and whatsoever courtesie bindeth me to I will perform before I pass further. By this time he was encompassed with Armed Knights, and one of them named Linseus of Arabia, who thought himself too good for all, and had banquished many that had combated with him, said: Before thou pass further thou must combate with us; for the meanest that are here assembled, thinks himself able to perform as much as thee. The Knight of the Oracle wondring at their rudeness, and moved with his discourteous words, said: I am not to be controled by any, but stand free in my own choice to do what I think good, if thou, or any here, be offended with what I have said, or done, challenge me, I do challenge thee, (said Linseus) and I (quoth Menon) and after him many others, every one desirous to deal with him first; then stepped forth the Prince of Parthia, named Nessus, saying: Fellow Knights, we being all professors of Arms, and every one a partner in this quarrel, let us cast Lots, and to his share the Lot falls first, let him begin, and the rest follow, to which they agreed. The Knight of the Oracle thought he should not be idle, rejoycing that he had so good an occasion, to make tryal of his valor: the Lot fell to Arnon of Persia to begin the place a goodly plain, in the full view of the Tower, and the time was within an hour.

This being agreed upon, The Knight of the Oracle in the interim rode about the Tower, to behold the beauty and scituation thereof; and casting up his eye, he espied on the Battlements afar off, three Ladies walking together, whom he could scarcely discern, much less know, if he had been acquainted with them. These Ladies were Constantia, Philotheta, and Ila, who came to behold the Lists and Turneys that were daily acted between divers Knights before the Tower. Constant a bearing of Persicle's safety in that Country, hoping in time to be released, desired to see the Combats which before she refused to do. The Knight of the Oracle little thinking Philotheta had been

one of the three, after he had a while stood to behold them, he returned to the appointed place of Combat, where Arnon was then newly entred with great pride, and the sound of Trumpets and a great number of followers, whom The Knight of the Oracle over-threw at the first encounter, to Arnon's amazement and his own glory. The next that encountred him was Linseus, who held out two courses, but at the third, both he and his Horse lay on the ground, the Knights that beheld this, commended his valour, yet envyed his fortune. After he had encountred three stout Knights of Egypt; then came Nessus Prince of Parthia, thinking to recover what his Predecessors had lost, but his fortune proved so bad, that he lost both his stirrups, and had he not hung on the Saddle-bow, he had fallen to the Earth. The day by this time drew to an end which caused them to remit any further trial till next morning. Constantia and Philotheta beholding the valour of this Knight, one judged it was Persicles, and the other to be Montelion, desiring Ila to send a Messenger to know his name, who returning, told them he was called The Knight of the Oracle. Then it is not Persicles (said Constantia.) No, nor Montelion (quoth Philotheta.) Their hearts now fainting with Care, that before were revived with Hope. The Knight of the Oracle that night lodged in the Tent of a Persian Knight, named Thymus who kindly entertained him thereto. Early the next morning he entred the field, being ready for him that should next encounter him, who came gallantly mounted: Having travelled many miles to try the Adventure, but before he came to try himself therein, he received so great a charge by encountring The Knight of the Oracle, that in a desparate mood, and ashamed of the foil, he departed the Field.

The Knight of the Oracle being endued with an excellent wit, as receiving the Essence thereof from two goodly Princes, as he was sprung of, began in his mind to condemn the fondness of those Knights, that coming to make trial of their adventure, spent their time in private quarrels, still omitting that they principally sought; His mind being troubled with the loss of Philotheta and Persicles, desired not to stay there, but to hasten in their search; therefore going towards the Knights, who were assembled on a Heap, studying which way to work his

disgrace,

disgrace, he said: Worthy Knights, my coming to this place was not to try my fortune against you, but in the Adventure, and your private envy hath hindred me, not regarding into what private quarrels you enter, and causelessly trouble me that have not offended you; therefore because busines of more importance than to answer your envy, doth urge my departure, I wish you not to fear my ability to answer you, but to remit this private contention to another time: and if any of you enviously condemn me or repine at my good fortune, I will be ready to answer your several quarrels in Persia, at the time that is appointed for the meeting of the Kings of Assyria and Armenia; for the cause of your approach being to release the Ladies imprisonment, weaken not your force in private contention, for in the trial of it, you will find occasion enough to exercise your Arms. Hearing his words they agreed thereto, but yet contended who should try the Adventure first: In the end they agreed to cast Lots, and the last fell to The Knight of the Oracle, every one having a dates respite for the finishing thereof.

Thus did they make trial of themselves, some with much labor attaining the Bridge, but then forced by the vertue of Enchantment to yield, and so were imprisoned in lamentable sort by Ila, who desired the Enchantment might never end, & others with fear run away. Many dates it was before it came to The Knight of the Oracle's turn; in the end, all being fled or imprisoned, he alone was left to try his fortune, neither having friend to succour him, foe to envy him, or any to behold him, for the Enchantress had made such desolation amongst the Tents, by casting fire amongst them, that all the Servants of those Knights fled as amazed, reporting from place to place their Masters misery; Yet all this did not discourage The Knight of the Oracle, but he rested as resolute to go forwards, as if there had been no danger in the attempt.

Constantia seing how many Knights were at that instant imprisoned, all their Tents destroyed, and no man as she thought left, began to discomfit her self, utterly despairing of releasement, desiring Ila to let her view the Knights that were imprisoned, fearing Periola being there; but her requests were in vain, for Ila fretted with extream fear of the end of her En-

chantment; in a mad rage flung from them, stopping which way to lengthen the date thereof, which tormented both Constantia and Philotheta, with great grief of farther calamity.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How *The Knight of the Oracle* finished the Enchantment; and how *He* departed with *Philotheta*.

BEfore bright Phœbus that morning could shew her splendent beams, The Knight of the Oracle was up, viewing the situation of the Bridge; to see which way he might advantage himself or disadvantage his Foe, and winding the Horn there was an exceeding Earth-quake within the Tower, that the Foundation thereof shook: and one of the Gyants came running forth, without speaking a word, striking at him, but he defended himself a great while on Horse-back, until the Gyant pressed so hard upon him, that he was forced to dismount, and thereupon again assailed him, giving him many a deep cut, and receiving many a sore bruise, that had not his Armor preserved him, he had dyed, but in the end, he prevailed so much by the death of the first Gyant, that he attained the first and second Fortification of the Bridge; and at the third he was so violently set upon by the other Gyant, that he was only compelled to ward his blows, but espying a broken place in his Armor, he thrust his Sword quite through his body, by which means, he entred the first large Court, where he beheld the Armor of such Knights as had failed in the Adventure.

Ila knowing that the Date of the Enchantment would now end, in furious sort came running to the place where Constantia and Philotheta were, taking Philotheta with violence out of the Arbor, and by force of her Enchantment compelled her to follow her until she came to the Court, where The Knight of the Oracle was: He suddenly beholding Philotheta, at the first sight knew her, and seeing them pass by, towards the entrance, he stept after them to speak to her, but suddenly rushed upon him a number

number of Armed men, that laid upon him with such swiftness that he had no power to stir from the place where he stood; then suddenly banishing, he stood amazed at the sight, and perplexed with such doubt, that he could not tell what to do, sometimes thinking to follow Philotheta, then perswading himself it was but an illusion, and thinking to cast of that doubt, and go forwards, his mind was possessed with such desire to see her again, that he stood like a man without sence, and suddenly such a mist darkned the place, that he could scarce see his hands, continuing for the space of an hour: whilst he remained in these cogitations, sometimes of perswasion it was she, which troubled his heart to think who should be become of her, that he seem'd to have lost his senses: remaining in many meditations, the mist banished and the Sun shining disclosed the beauty of that most stately Palace, when he saw no further expectation of danger appear, he entred further, towards the three Gates of Brass, beholding the curious works thereof, through which he entred into the Court, which drew his mind into great admiration thereof, and entring the Hall, he beheld the two Lyons that kept the passage: which with a fair prospect discovered the beauty of the Garden. The Lyons no sooner espyed him, but they presently kept such a roaring noise that all the Palace rung thereof, and Constantia hearing the same, cryed out as exceedingly affrighted, The Knight of the Oracle attempted to pass by them, expecting no other but cruel resistance, but contrary to his thoughts, they laid themselves down at his feet, as it were reverencing him: which he beholding of his own inclination, loosed both their Chains, which when he had done, they ran out of the Palace with great swiftness. Passing through the Hall, he entred the Garden, looking round about him to behold the beauty thereof: and suddenly he began to wonder that he had not beheld neither Man, Woman, or Child, since he entred, which caused exceeding admiration in him, marvelling greatly, that he could not behold the Lady whose Picture he beheld at the entrance, so finding himself overwearied with labor, purposing to rest his body he entred into the Hall, and seated himself in a rich and costly Chair.

Constantia being in an Arbor, beheld him enter the Garden, and

and when he went back, marvelling what he should be, and lastly, thinking the enchantment was ended, not daring to go out of the Arbor, her heart was so oppress with amazement, that she desired one of the Damosels to see who he was, and learn the cause of that uproar they heard in the Palace. One of the Damosels being more hardy than the other, said: That for the love she bare her, she would adventure, though she lost her life. Passing on towards the Palace with hasty steps, as if some body had pursued her, and going forwards as if an evil had been before her, that she could not tell whither, wherefore, nor why she went, until on a sudden she mounted the passage into the Hall, and was right before the Knight of the Oracle, whom when she saw, she stood looking upon him with great amazement, whilst he said unto her: Damosel fear not I will defend you from danger here is none intends you harm. The Damosel hearing his voice was revived, saying: Sir Knight, I wonder what accident hath brought you hither, where no Knight hath been these twenty years? Lady said he, Fortune and my good Destinies, that have been employed to set you at liberty. Sir, (qd. she) it is not I but my Sisters you mean, by whose command I have adventured to see what hath happned, to whom if you will vouchsafe to go, I will conduct you. He then remembred it was not her Picture that he had seen, and blushed to be so deceived, but he told her his coming was to do her Lady service: with that they entred the Garden, and Constantia soon espyed him; and seeing the Knight come in such peaceable sort with the Damosel, she went forth to meet him; He likewise seeing her, sheathed his Sword, his heart trembling at the first sight of her, by a Natural instinct, bearing such a reverend regard to her Majestical person, that when he came near her he bowed his knee, and said: Most Noble Lady, be not disquieted with fear of restrained liberty, for the date of the Enchantment of this Castle is finished. Constantia stept to him, and took him by the hand, desiring him not to kneel to her, who had more cause to kneel to him. Honored Lady (said he) I have all the reward I expect, yet grant one labour, which is, to tell me your name. Constantia's heart leap'd within her, which caused an exceeding blush to possess her cheeks, saying: Noble Knight, I were to blame to deny you so

so small a request: my name is *Constantia*. Then hath Heaven (quoth he) made me happy in finding you, whom my heart ever honoured. Constantia marvelling who he should be, assuring her self it was not Perficles, because he asked her Name, yet conceiving that sorrow might alter her in so long a time, that he could not suddenly know her; she was much troubled till he interrupted her with these speaches: Lady, it may be you take me for another, to rid you out of which ambiguity, my name is The Knight of the Oracle, which I have but lately been known by, for before I was called Montelion, being bred up in Assyria; but whether I was born there, or who my Parents were, I cannot tell; the cause of my travel into this Country was in your search, in the company of Perficles, who for your absence liveth in perpetual grief, therefore chear up your heart, and put confidence in my fidelity, who will not leave you till I have brought you to his presence. Constantia's heart was so filled with joy to hear his words, and withal, remembring that Philotheta had told her of Montelion, she said: Most honoured Knight, I have heard before of your loyal friendship, shown to my dear Lord *Perficles*, which makes me put my whole confidence in you, which came to my hearing by the report of a Lady that you lately succoured in that Country, named *Philotheta*. He hearing that, fetch'd a deep sigh, saying: Indeed I once enjoyed her presence, but whether I shall ever see her again, or where she is, I know not; yet if I were not deluded, I beheld her passing out of this Castle. It may be so (said Constantia) for she was with me this day, and hath been here many daies; but the Enchantress in great hast, and by violence took her from me, carrying her I know not whither, by whose report of your vertues, I conceive such comfort in their assurance, that I entreat your promise of assistance, and then shall my heart rest void of fear, as if I were in my Fathers Court.

My heart (said he) rejoyceth to hear your kind speeches, vowing to imploy my self to be at your command. Then they departed into the Palace, with purpose not to carry there but instantly to leave the same: but coming into the outward Court he remembred he heard the voices of men that lay in bondage, being willing to succour them, desiring her not to be offended,

it

if he made some stay to release them out of bondage, which he could soon do, when there was none to resist him, and in small search he found the Keys that opened the entrance into the prison, leaving Constantia in security, for he would not offend her sences with the smell thereof; and being entred, he found a great number there enclosed, many of them in such poor and distressed estate, that his heart lamented to behold them: at last he espyed Helion (though to him unknown) whose flesh seemed to be incorporate with the Earth whereon he lay, from whence he could not rise without help, and knowing the Enchantment to be finished repented himself of what he had done. When he had set them at liberty, and they were come into the clear light, with one assent all yielded him thanks: Constantia likewise seeing them, wept for grief, that so many should be endangered to set her at liberty. They all proffered their service unto her, but she desiring not to be known of any, in courteous sort refused the same, reposing her whole confidence in The Knight of the Oracle, who presently according to her desire left the Palace, and without the Bridge he found his Horse grazing amongst others that had lost their Riders amongst them he chose out three, on which he mounted Constantia and her two Damosels, hasting to travel so far, as the dales length would permit from the Palace, lodging that night in a small Village: The Knights that had liberty seeing them departed, betook themselves to travel, except Helion, who was so weak he could not travel.

CHAP. XXIX.

How *The Knight of the Oracle* departed with *Constantia*; how they arrived at *Dilatus*'s Castle. How she knew him to be her Son.

COnstantia found such courteous behaviour, and kind assistance in the Knight, that she remained in great quiet; but noting his countenance, she perceived it to be darkned with some misty clouds of discontent, which she supposed to be for the loss of Philotheta, but yet she concealed her opinion from him, whereingle jump'd right on his infirmity; for his heart was pinched with such care for her loss and safety, that he

cou'd

could endure no quiet. In the morning when they should depart, they disputed whether they should prepare to travel, or stay to hear of Persicles there or go directly into Assyria: amongst many doubts, they agreed to travel into Assyria, where he told Constantia they should assuredly find him; for the time of the appointed meeting of him and the King of Armenia drew nigh. After many daies travel, they came to the place where he remembred he first saw Philotheta, and parted from Persicles: which he revealed not to Constantia, as unwilling to make her privy to his love: yet he purposed in his journey to visit Amphiador hoping to find her there; and coming to the Castle, he was welcomed thither by Delatus, who was again restored to his Dukedom. Sir (quoth The Knight of the Oracle) I thought this had been Amphiador's Castle. Amphiador did possess it (said he) but indeed the right was mine; and though I have no acquaintance with you, yet I beseech you accept such entertainment as it yieldeth; and if no longer, yet for this night, that I may know whom I have lodged, and you have some knowledge of my affection unto you. They both noting with what hearty words he spake, being weary with travel, alighted to rest themselves, being kindly welcomed by him and Alsala. After supper Delatus began these speeches.

Worthy Knight should I rehearse the whole circumstance of my misfortune and Amphiador's wickedness, I should both trouble you with the tediousness, and renew my own sorrows: only this, he wrought means to deprive me of this my Dukedom, and caused Penthrasus to Enchant me in the Desart with purpose I should never return; yet he favouring me bound me there no longer than Constantia should remain Enchanted in the Tower built by K. Helion, revealing many secrets to me that I will disclose hereafter. Not many daies since, I found my self at liberty, whereby knowing the Enchantment was ended. The same day Is favouring Amphiador, seeing her power at an end, came to this Castle, bringing Philotheta with her (not his) but my daughter, declaring my releasement, with whom he is fled, but whither I knew not, which I fear will turn to her great sorrow: for his mind is so apt to cruelty, that he careth not to act any Villany to satisfie his own mind. I tell this unto you, though

I know it concerns you not, yet to let you understand that by finishing the Enchantment, I was released; which in knowing gave him knowledge of which is the cause of his flight. I desire you, (said he) to grant me one favour, which is to let me know if your name be not Constantia. I am (quoth she) that most unfortunate creature, and by this Knights valor was I set at liberty, to whom I am much bound. My heart greatly rejoyceth (said Delatus) that ever I had cause to do you any courtesie, and that it was my good fortune to see you in this place having long wished for your release; not only for my own good, but for that noble King Perficles sake, who was with me in the Desart when I lived enthralled, and with earnest resolution determined to spend the date of his life in your search: from which I dissuaded him, and by my direction he returned into Assyria; for the sequel of your releasement was revealed to me, by Pentrasus himself, which none could atchieve but your own Son, which is this noble Knight. Nay (said he) doubt not of this, for what he revealed, and I have published is true, though it resteth not in my knowledge to dilate the circumstance of it. They both wondred at his speeches, and The Knight of the Oracle said; Can I be more fortunate; or hear better news, or receive any comfort more than this? O Heavens, grant that my joyful hope may not be frustrated, but that I may be assured I am descended of such noble Parents, which may be true: For Corbanes often told me, that he found me on the top of a Mountain lying in swadling cloaths, and not far off the body of a woman torn and dismembred by wild Beasts, and many Jewels about me, one of which I have ever since worn about my neck. Constantia seeing it knew the same, embracing him in her arms, and kissing him, whilst he with humble duty did her reverence. I should be too tedious to recite their joys, and how much Delatus and Alfala made of them, who would not so leave them, but promised to travel with them into Assyria, where they were assured to meet Perficles, but in such sort that none might know them, for as yet Constantia feared her Fathers displeasure. They stayed there but that night, and early the next morning they betook themselves to travel. Notwithstanding this joy, The Knight of the Oracle felt some sparks of discontent which troubled his senses, and turn

ed his quiet into disquiet, which was with the remembrance of Philotheta, whose mishap pinched him to the heart: she was also troubled with the same disquiet, fearing never to see him again, little thinking it had been he that finished the Enchantment; besides, she was much troubled with Ila's dealing, who having brought her to Amphiador, fled, and was never seen of her again.

Amphiador being alone with Philotheta, thought it not good for him to discover himself, lest he thereby should hazard his life, but disguising himself and her, left Arabia, and travelled into Persia, thinking to live there till death, undescryed; and finding out a habitation fit for that purpose, he told her what he intended, perswading her to stay with him. This troubled her very heart, fearing some greater mischief would follow, which according to her misdoubt fell out: for when he saw no means to recover his Dignity, nor to attain any other felicity but to live in obscurity, his mind being addicted to a licentious desire began to dote on Philotheta's beauty, which burst out into a flame, revealing the same in this sort: Philotheta (qd. he) if you knew what I would say, or if you could conceive my meaning without words, I would refrain to speak; but since there is no hope for me to live without attaining my desire, I will utter to you the depth of my good will, and the thing I desire so much, you should know, which is, that I love you: this I hope cannot be grievous unto you. Should I not (said she) love you, I were to be accounted very ungrateful and unworthy, having found you so kind, which bindeth me to yield you thanks. Then (said he) let me enjoy that love; for your beauty hath enchanted my heart, and nothing but the sweet thereof can ease my torment: here we may live together bold of disquiet enjoying each others love with content, which exceedeth the pleasure that more dignified Honour yieldeth. Philotheta at the first understood his meaning, replying with mildness, but her heart so much disdained to yield to that he desired, that she could not contain her self, but made him this answer: Amphiador, dost thou think thy wickedness can obermaster my vertue? Or dost thou think I can like to hear thy odious speeches that bewrayeth the inward rancor of thy heart: Or dost thou behold such lowseness in me, that should ani-

mate thée to this dishonourable attempt? Or dost thou think that I will yield to thy lust? No, now that I so much abhor thée that I shall count my self the worse because I know thée, and curse my cruel Destinies that have made me to see thée, and will rather end my life desperately, than suffer my self to conceive one good thought of thée: therefore leave off where thou hast begun, for I will sooner Massacre my self, than yield to the least part of thy desire.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Amphiador*, *Philotheta*, and *Praxentia* met: how they prevented his Lust, and departed towards *Assyria*.

It chanced, that not long after, as Amphiador was walking alone in a solitary place, he heard the lamentation of a distressed Lady, who uttered these words: What misery am I brought into by my own doting folly on that unknown Knight who never regard me? Fond Woman that I am, thus to abandon my Fathers Court, where I was renowned for vertue: for who bear the name of Praxentia that did not adore the same? And who was more reverenced then my self, who now hath brought my honour into disgrace, and for the love of a stranger hath refused to match with so mighty a Prince as Polian? O Perficles, thée may I curse; for by thy means he is lost, or left where he will never return.

Amphiador wondred much to hear her name Perficles, Polian, and Praxentia, which names he knew, admired who it should be: but seeing her silent, he drew near her saying: Lady, hearing your laments, I could not chuse but pity you, which makes me thus bold to approach into your company, proffering my assistance to aid you in what I can. My friend (said Praxentia) against my will you are privy to my estate; which if you pity, succour me: for I am brought low by too much grief, and want for sustenance. Lady (qd. he) my habitation is not far off, whither if you will go, you shall have what you desire. Being come thither, they found Philotheta drowned in tears, the cause whereof he well knew: but Praxentia wondred at it, containing

another

another inward sorrow to see so sweet a creature in such sadness. Philotheta marvelled what she was, hoping by her company to receive some comfort.

Amphiador leaving them both together went out to meditate on what he had done, devising by what means to enjoy both their loves; which he was fully resolved to do, though the deed was never so wicked.

Praxentia having well refreshed her self with such good food as she had received, demanded Philotheta's cause of sorrow. Aye me, (said she) none so miserable as I: this Tyrant that brought you hither is my Father-in-law, whose mind is so wicked, that he strives to win me to his lust, which addeth much sorrow to my heart; so that I am weary of my life. My name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of Ila, whom all men thought had been dead: but he being informed of the contrary by the Enchantress, fled, bringing me hither by force, where he intends to keep me as his Bond-slave, but the Heavens I hope will ordain some succour to my distress. Your help I cannot desire, because you are in distress too: to remedy which evil you are fallen into a place that yieldeth no comfort: Before Praxentia could reply, Amphiador came in and entertained her with many counterfeit courtesies, and comforted her with many fair speeches, protesting so many services, that none but one of so impudent a disposition could have found on such a sudden to proffer: the purpose whereof Praxentia (being before forewarned) well understood, fearing some further mischief would follow thereon. That day they could have no further conference together, for he kept himself always in their company.

When it was night, they thought to have lodged together; but he ordered the contrary: by which means for three dayes after they could not utter their minds to one another. In the mean time Amphiador was never out of one of their companies, persuading Philotheta to yield her liking to what he had proffered; and using such speeches to Praxentia as might draw her to a good opinion of him.

One night Amphiador being very desirous to possess Praxentia's love, with softly steps he stole into her Chamber, creeping along the floor until he attained to the bed-side; and perceiving

her

her ſleep ſoundly, without ſpeaking he crept into the bed to her. She feeling one in the bed, was ſo amazed and affrighted, that before he could embrace her as he intended, ſhe leaped out on the other ſide, and ran to the dor: to whom he called, ſaying, I beſeech you ſtay, I meant you no harm, by Heaven, I will not offer you injury. What Villain art thou (ſaid ſhe) that ſeekeſt my diſhonour? Or what wicked pretence drives thee hither at this unſeaſonable time, and in ſuch audacious ſort to affright me? Neither intending your diſhonor, nor under other pretence than vertuous came your por ſervant Amphiador into your preſence, only with thankfulneſs to manifeſt my hearts true devotion: I beſeech you ſhun me not, nor ſuſpect me, for my heart will ſooner ſee it ſelf torn in pieces, than think a thought to wrong your worthineſs. Should I be ſo mad as to truſt thee, thou might eaſt well repute me for immodeſt, and well might I blame my ſelf if I ſuſtained wrong; therefore for this time I will leave you. With that ſhe made faſt the dor, and hasted unto Philotheta's Chamber, calling out aloud, Philotheta, Philotheta, let me in. She being aſleep, was half amazed with the noiſe, not daring at the firſt or ſecond call to open the dor: but when ſhe heard it was a womans voice, ſhe opened the ſame; which ſhe had no ſooner done, but Praxentia ſtept in, deſiring her to make it faſt again; ſtanding with fear ſo mute, that until ſhe had re-aſſumed her memorial ſences to their proper uſe, ſhe could not ſpeak a word, whilſt Philotheta bewailed her ſorrow, often demanding the cauſe thereof. At laſt ſhe declared how Amphiador had uſed her. O baſe Villain (ſaid Philotheta) will the Fates ſuffer him to proceed thus, and not cut him off, or can we deviſe no means to abord his intent? Lady (quoth Praxentia) do but joyn with me, and you ſhall ſoon ſee that between us we will quickly be rid of him. O Lord, (ſaid Philotheta) I ſhould think my ſelf the moſt happieſt woman living, and for ever honour you, if by your counſel and help I attain this felicity. Then (quoth ſhe) by ſome means or other convey his ſword into my Chamber, and there bide your ſelf till I come: in the mean time I will ſo deal with him, that he ſhall come again to my Chamber, without ſuſpect of our intent, with meer hopes to attain my love; and when he is come, I will ſo work with him, that either we will by cunning

ning

ning out reach him, or sheath the same in his bowels. All this, (said Philotheta) will I constantly performe.

Early the next morning Philotheta fetcht Praxentia's apparel, and putting it on, she went down where Amphidor was: who espying her, came to her, desiring that she would pardon his last nights boldness. Sir (said she) I was disquieted therewith more than I needed, considering you meant me no violence, as you protest: but it was great folly in you to come at so unseasonable a time, and not make the party acquainted. Pardon me, I humbly desire you; and withal pity me, that am ensnared with your beauty.

Many such speeches he used, and she counterfeited many fained denials, which was intermingled with such hope, that he perceived she would yield, and therefore the more he entreated, bowed and protested to win her consent: which at last, according to her appointment, she granted; but with such conditions as furthered the purpose of their intended revenge. He being joyful thereof, left her; and she went to Philotheta, declaring how she had dealt with him.

When night approached, he walked abroad to meditate on his ensuing pleasure; thinking by that time he returned they would be parted to their Lodgings. In the mean time Philotheta conveyed into the Chamber two Swords, being all the weapons that were in the house, and bid her fly from being seen. When he thought it time, he returned, and coming to the Chamber door, he found Praxentia ready to let him in, whose heart trembled at the first sight of him; but yet she shook it off with as much courage as might be in a woman. When he was entred, and the door made fast, having imbraced her with a lascivious kiss, the which she patiently endured by reason of her promise, he went to bed, whilst she stood trifling to undress her self. When she came to him laid, she came to the bed side, giving him a betraying kiss, saying Amphidor, how much do I now differ from chastity, that must yield to violate the same without the Holy Rites of Marriage, wherein I shall cast away my self, and make my name odious throughout the world, if you forsake me, of whose faith I have no assurance. Tush, (quoth he) fear not, but come to bed: I will then make thee a faithful promise, that thou shalt rest

content.

contented. That were (said she) to yield possession before, and afterwards repent. By my soul (said he) I will not touch you before I be licenced by your free consent. Then, (said she) let me bind your hands, and I will without delay come to you. He accounted that request to proceed from bashful fear, not from policy; thinking though his hands were bound, he should be good enough for her with his legs granted it. Then she took a Scarf which she had brought on purpose, and therewith bound his hands so fast that it was impossible for him to undo them; which done Philothea step'd forth, delivering one of the Swords to Praxentia, and holding the other against his breast, said: Now, Amphiador, what hath thy lewdness brought thee unto but misery? Thinkest thou, that had no mercy in seeking our dishonour, to find remorse in us to work revenge? Nay, Villainous Traytor (said Praxentia) should we suffer so vile a Miscreant to live, we should do a wicked deed: for a man of thy impious life will infect the whole world. Art thou so treacherous that thou carest not what Laws thou violatest, and yet so simple as to be overcome by a woman? Yet know whom thou hast offended and to whom thou wouldst have done violence: know, I say, Traytor that my name is Praxentia, Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, that will work revenge upon thee, for thy heinous act. Amphiador marvailed when he heard her name; and he lay confounded with shame, his heart fainting with such fear, that with little violence it would have been overcome. To make him more sure, one of them bound his feet, whilst the other stood ready to stab him if he stirred. This done, they withdrew themselves, consulting which way to be rid of him. Most noble Lady (quoth Philothea) your prudence hath set us at liberty from this Tyrant, whom if you please, we will leave in this place, and not stain our innocent hands with his impure blood. But (said Praxentia) how shall we escape from hence? Softly replyed she, for leaving him fast bound there is none to pursue us. Then Praxentia went unto him, and said: Amphiador, we cannot as yet resolve how to work sufficient revenge upon thee; therefore make no exclamation, but with patience abide our will, which will be favourable: for if we hear thee but once open thy mouth, such shall be thy usage, that thou shalt wish thou hadst

taken

taken our directions; upon which they locked the Door, and left him. Then they began to consult what to do; Praxentia saying, Lady, it may be you will travel into Arabia, which will occasion our separation; for I resolve to go to Assyria, upon an occasion that concerns no less than my life, which I will impart unto you upon promise of secrecie. I were not worthy to live (replyed she) if I revealed your counsel. Then did she unfold her love to Montelion, and how Palian crost the same. Philothetaes heart melted within her to hear her speech, fearing to be disappointed of her intent, being troubled with so great anguish that so great a Princess should be her Rival; sometimes thinking that he did not esteem her according to his speech, but that he proffered his love to her of common courtesie to try her affection. Many other cogitations occurred in her brain; but seeing that she expected a reply, she made this answer: Most Noble Princess, if you will accept of my company, I will in regard of your courtesie undeservedly shewed to me, venture my self with you, and do my best to further you in attaining your desire. Praxentia was glad thereof; and with this resolution in the morning they left the place, travelling towards Assyria, changing their upper Garments into Palmers Gray.

CHAP. XXXI.

How *The Knight of the Oracle*, *Constantia*, and the rest, hearing a lamentable cry, found *Amphiador* starved to death.

AMphiador lay all that day upon the Bed fast bound, perswading himself they meant him no evil; but when it drew to night, he marvelled that they came not again: Then he began to suspect the truth, that they were departed; which vexed him so much, that he would have destroyed himself if he could have found means, continuing the length of that discomfortable night in cursing his own Fortune and Folly, that had brought him to that misery; thinking either to starve there for want of Food, or to preserve his life by eating of his own flesh, and so to die a lingering death. Four days after.

Fortune brought things to pass, that the Knight of the Oracle, Delatus, Constantia and Alsala, with many others in their Company, having lost their way, lighted on the place where Amphiador lay, making such lamentation for want of food, that it pierced the ears of the Knight, who first hearing the same, set spurs to his Horse, and entred the house, the door whereof he found open, and drawing his sword he found the Chamber from whence that pitious cry proceeded, fast locked, which he brake open, and found Amphiador in such a lamentable plight that the water stood in his eyes. Aphiador seing him, cried out for meat. What art thou? (quoth he) My name (said he) is Amphiador, wicked Amphiador, that for my sins endures this punishment. The Knight of the Oracle presently unbound him, and went with him to seek for victuals, which he soon found. By this time Delatus and the rest were entred, and Amphiador espying Alsala, fell down dead. Farewel (said the Knight of the Oracle) hadst thou died sooner, then should not some have cause to complain of thy tyranny. They made short tarriance in that place, for that it yielded little comfort, but again travelled towards Assyria.

CHAP. XXXII.

How the Emperor of *Persia* and the King of *Macedonia*, met to conclude the peace between *Persicles* and the King of *Armenia*: how *Persicles* erected a Pavilion to entertain all strangers: how the *Knight of the Oracle* and *Constantia* arrived there: how *Persicles* discovered them, and of the joy that was made for their safety: How *Persicles* knew the *Knight of the* O R A C L E to be his Son, and was afterwards married to *Constantia*.

THe Emperor of Persia and the King of Macedonia (according to the Peace ratified between Persicles and the King of Armenia) met at the City of Pilos, and were there received by Persicles in such honourable sort, as it is not to be described. This City of Pilos bordereth on the utmost Confines of Assyria, not above a furlong distant from Armenia, on the edge whereof stood the City of Lasar, rich and populous, where the King of Arme-

Armenia then lay. Between these two Cities was so large a valley of plains, that the fair prospect of both the Cities lay open to each others view. In the midst of this valley were the Royal Tents of Persia and Macedonia pitcht, and about them a number of Tents of gallant Knights that came to bear them company; and both the Cities were fortified with Garrisons of Souldiers, to prevent injury that might be offered to either party. The King of Macedonia likewise brought with him his three Sons, Mentrus, Darius, Tharsus, his Queen, and his fair Daughter Sabina, in whose company were the choisest Ladies of Macedonia, and such Troops of valiant Knights, that all the Valley was filled with their Tents and Pabitions. Persicles trusting to the assurance Delatus had given him of Corsamira's release, caused all the beautiful Damosels in Assyria to be brought before him, electing out of them one hundred, whom he caused to be cloathed all in white. He also caused a stately Pabilion to be erected in the view of all the rest, of such costly and curious work that all that beheld it admired the same: over the door of the Pabilion were these Verses:

Honour, Valour, and Vertue guard this place,
Where Honour is for all that these embrace:
An absent Knight of honour'd Gifts and Fame
Shall be their Host, MONTELION is his name.
Here boldly enter; repose and feed;
For love to him made *Persi l s* do this deed.
Whoe're he can tell where he remains,
Shall have a Royal Gift to quit his pains.

Persicles's intent in doing this, was that all Strangers that had no possession of their own, should there find entertainment in honour of Montelion, in whose memorial he had built the same, as a remembrance of his love and favour; his intent being to draw all strangers thither, by whose report he hoped to hear some news of his belaved friend.

Within few days The Knight of the Oracle and his company arrived at Assyria; and meeting with an Assyrian, he demanded of him whose Tents those were: he declared to him all that he knew. Where may we have Lodging (said he?) Not in the City (answered the Assyrian) for thither are none permitted to

come without examination: but in the midst of these Tents is a Pabilion in remembrance of the Noble Knight Montelion, who freed our Country from the Armenians; in which, all Strangers have entertainment in his remembrance. Wilt thou direct us thither, (said he?) and I will reward thee. I will, replied the Assyrian. When they came thither, according to his report, they were entertained, and lodged in such sort as they desired; and being late, every one departed to their place of rest, omitting further conference until next day.

Early the next morning The Knight of the Oracle arming himself mounted his Steed, and rode up and down till Noon, to behold the Tents and beautiful Situation of those two Cities, and to see the Lists and Turnies that were performed by many Knights, returning again to confer with his Brother about discovering themselves.

Persides hearing that many Strangers were in Montelion's Pabilion, disguised himself in the Habit of one of his own men, only to view them, and see if his Servants used them so honorably as he intended: and coming into the room where Constantia, The Knight of the Oracle, Delatus, and Alsala, at the first sight knew Delatus and Montelion, who was called Knight of the Oracle; and viewing well Constantia he also knew her. Then did he presently believe that The Knight of the Oracle had released her. All these joys concurring, filled up his senses with such delight, that he was forced to withdraw himself from being discovered, which at that time he would not be. Altering his disguise again, he went to the Emperor of Persia's Tent; and finding him in a convenient place, he uttered these speeches.

Most renowned Emperor, the friendship and help I have received by your favor, without any merit of my own, hath made me most infinitely bound unto your Excellency; yet nevertheless I desire one favour more at your hands, which you may with more safety grant than deny, and thereby make me and your self both happy. My loving friend, (said he) whatever it be, I will not deny it you. I make the more doubt, (replied he) because I have heard you vow the contrary; and yet should you perform that Vow, it would procure much discontent. I rash Vows said the Emperor) may be broken; therefore let me know your

request,

request, and it may be I will dispence therewith. My desire is, (said he) that you would pardon your Daughter Constantia, and remit the offence committed by her and him, that caused her to leave the Persian Court. Why, my Lord, (said the Emperor) do you know where she is? First, I beseech you, (quoth he) grant my request, and I will tell you all I know. For your sake (said he) I will freely accept her into my favor. I humbly thank you, (replyed he) both for her and my self: It was my unhappy self that was the cause of her departure, but since that time, I have not seen her till this day, for going to the Pavilion, which is named by Montelion, I saw her there in company with him, who is called, The Knight of the Oracle. The Emperor rejoyced greatly to hear these tidings, which so well pleased him, that he could not chuse but reveal it to the Empress, who was ready to run forth of her Tent to see her. The Emperor and Empress with a goodly Train, accompanied by Perticles, who had sent for three hundred Damosels, and most of the Peers of Assyria to welcome Constantia, with great joy went to the Pavilion, the Emperor and Empress going before, and he coming after, that when their greetings were past, he might have the more liberty to Embrace her. Then entring the room where Constantia and Montelion were, knew her, and she them falling prostrate before them, whilst they welcomed her with great kindness. Then welcoming The Knight of the Oracle, Perticles embraced Constantia, each weeping for joy: O Heavens (said he) never was I blest till this happy hour: after so much sorrow to enjoy such pleasure: Montelion's approach brake of their speech, who kneeled before him. Nay, dear friend said he, kneel not, for I am not worthy to be so honoured. My Lord, (quoth Delatus) well may he do it, for he is your own Son. More honor, joy, comfort and content (said Perticles) could never have happened to any mortal man, then doth this day to me; to find a Father, a Wife, and a Son, that this day knew not either Father, Wife, or Son: one so honorable and manificent, the other so vertuous, bountiful, and loving; the last so valiant, vertuous, magnanimous, and prudent that all the worlds wealth cannot counterbail my riches. Then turning to the Emperor, kneeling down with them, he said,

Renowned

Renowned Emperor, I beseech you accept us three as your children, remitting all displeasure conceived against us. Then did the Emperor and Empress, Doratus and Piera, all embrace them, weeding tears of joy for their happy meeting. The Nobles welcomed The Knight of the Oracle and Constantia, and such joy was made on every side, as is not to be expressed. Parting from thence towards the City in Royalty, they were welcomed by the Citizens and Merchants with great joy, whilst the Emperor uttered these speeches:

See here, my friends of Assyria, your Liege-Lord and Sovereign, the Son of Persicles and Constantia! How may you applaud the bounty of Heaven, providing for you such a Noble Prince? Then taking Constantia by the hand, he said: Here Persicles, take my daughter; I give her thee as freely as the Heavens gave her me, that Marriage may join hands as true love hath united your hearts. He took that Gift with more joy than if he had delivered him the Worlds Monarchy; saying. Most mighty Emperor, I know not how to render sufficient thanks, in that your Highness is pleased to enrich me with your daughter, which hath been the only thing I always desired, for which I hope to shew deserts hereafter, as neither she shall be discontented, nor your Majesty repent this good deed.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How the two Ladies arrived at the Pavilion: how *Philotheta* discovered to *Montelion Praxentias* love, to make trial of him whom she most dearly loved.

NOw great joy was made by the Assyrians for these accidents. That evening had brought the two Ladies Philotheta and Praxentia to the City-walls, where they beheld the Turnaments, and saw The Knight of the Oracle bear away the prize, whom they were informed to be Montelion, and Son of Persicles and Constantia. This news rejoyced them both; Praxentia hoping to enjoy his love, and Philotheta purposing to live no longer than to live in hope to do the like; taking the entertainment of The Knight of the Oracles Pavilion, which yielded them such

security

ſecurity as they deſired. Praxentia bethinking her ſelf of a way to effect her deſire, thus breake her mind to Philotheta: Lady, (ſaid ſhe) I am more beholding unto you for undertaking this travel for my ſake, than I ſhall ever live to requite; notwithſtanding for that my paſſions crave pitty, and your good help, I beſeech you aid me in this extremity: I have made my name and fortune known to you, and now it would be in vain for me to ſtay; for ſhould I manifeſt my love, it would turn to my everlaſting ſhame; I will therefore make my being known here to none, but The Knight of the Oracle, which ſhall be done by this means, if you will undertake it. In this habit you may as ſafely go without being known as if you had never been ſeen; and finding him out, give him knowledge of my being here, and the miſery I have endured for his ſake; uttering the ſame in ſuch form of words, as ſhall beſt like you, this will be a means to bring me comfort, if you will perform the ſame. Philotheta promiſed her that ſhe would do it the next day.

Early the next morning Philotheta diſguiſing her ſelf, left the Pavilion to ſeek opportunity to deliver her Meſſage; and coming to the City gates, with a pretended excuſe (if ſhe were examined) found no reſiſtance: but coming to the Palace ſhe entred into the great Hall, where ſhe ſtaied to ſee the Royalty of the Court, till ſhe beheld The Knight of the Oracle, only attended by his Page, paſs into the Garden, and then ſhe followed him, till he looking back, and eſpied a Palmer behind him, ſtaied, courteouſly demanding what he would have? who ſaid, Knight of the Oracle, I have a matter of ſecreſie to deliver to you. The moſt vertuous, beautiful, and conſtant Lady Praxentia, whom you well know, having ever ſince ſhe firſt ſaw you, loved you, (though without comfort) endured much ſorrow for your abſence, regarding her love to you more than her Life, Parents, and Country, hath for your ſake left her Pomp and Dignity, to live in ſorrow and miſery to find you out, who remaineth now in the Pavilion, where for your ſake all ſtrangers are entertained in ſuch ſorrow and anguiſh, as did you behold, the ſame, your vertuous mind could not choſe but pity her. This I am bold to utter to you not ſent hither, but in pity of her, and to do you good, ſhe being Daughter to the mighty King of Macedonia.

Palmer

Palmer (said he) I commend thy good meaning, and wish I could follow thy Counsel, which bringeth much disquiet to my heart: I pity her more than she doth her self, and do wish not to have been born, rather than she should do her self wrong for my sake: She is worthy to be beloved, but I cannot alter my affections that are already settled, where yet I reap no hope of comfort, and I am kept from by many difficulties, which makes me equal to her in sorrow. I speak not this with intent you should tell it her, for that would make her more desperate; but I fear that you are sent by her: which if it be so, you will do me wrong and her no good: therefore I pray you dissuade her if you can: for a strangers counsel in such matters prevails much: and if you can bring me news that she hath revolted from this love I shall count my self most happy.

Sir, (said the Palmer) I would return to you again, if I knew conveniently how to come to speak with you: I will be (replyed he) to morrow within the City about this time, hoping to hear better news from her by thy perswasions. Then giving the Palmer a rich Jewel for his pains, they parted, Philothea out of the Palace, and he into the Garden, meditating on what he had heard. Philothea returning to the Pavilion, uttered the whole sum of the conference she had with the Knight of the Oracle, unto Praxentia; which when she heard it so grieved her that Philothea expected when she would have yielded up the Ghost: which to prevent, she said, not so impatient but hearken to my Counsel; I have appointed to come to him to morrow; at which time I will deal so effectually with him, that he shall come and speak with you, and when he sees your laments, there is no doubt but he will consent. This somewhat satisfied her; yet her mind was so full of grief and vexation, that her eyes could take no rest, by reason of the earnest desire she had to hear the next news. Philothea was not void of care, as she had good cause, undertaking a matter against her self; yet to make assured trial of his constancy, she did it. Being alone she meditated on the doubtful issue of this attempt, which would either procure her much joy or sorrow, sometimes perswading her self, it was she he loved, that he was constant, that no perswasions could alter him; yet she thought Praxentias birth beauty & lament might

overcom

obercome him, and the rather, for that he had no assurance of her love or ever to see her again. Thus this fair Lady tormented her self with contrariety of doubts, longing as much or more than Praxentia for the next mornings approach.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Treasons practised against *The Knight of the Oracle.*

The King of Armenia seeing such a League concluded, by means of this marriage, between the Emperor of Persia and Persicles, enbying his good, thought that he was likely to prevail nothing against him by that means; and calling unto him a Knight whom he most laboured, and was always counselled by, named Cisor, to him he uttered his discontent, who presently counselled him to break the peace, and suddenly surprise the City. The King liked not that counsel, but rather desired by some secret means either to poyson Persicles and his Son, or set some discord between them and the King of Macedonia, that so the peace might be broken. Cisor promised to performe somewhat to that effect; and finding but Palian he said: Noble Prince, I marvel you suffer your Glory thus to be darkned by this upstart Knight that nameth himself of the Oracle: can so honourable a mind as yours brook such indignities? Is not Assyria yours by right? Are not you more noble by birth, and worthy to be as famous as he is? Why do you suffer him and his Father to carry away all the prize of honor? Are all the Knights in Armenia too weak to cope with him? Doth not his behaviour shew that he scorns you? Hath not he alone crost your good Fortune? Then like not to be reviled but to revenge. Joyn with the King of Macedonia's Sons, who are of the same mind I am, and I will lay you down such a plot as shall abate his brabery. If these Knights and such as are now come out of Macedonia cannot foil them, then shall you live in contempt of the whole world, and be accounted their inferior.

Palian hearing his speeches, breathing forth a deep sigh, said, Thou renewest my grief afresh: for I have found so much sorrow in that kind of discontent, that my heart is obercome there-

therewith, and fain would work my releasement: if you would be secret, and swear to assist me, I would tell my whole heart unto you. Upon his protestations he revealed his love to Praxentia, and how he was crost by Montelion, with all that had past since, and of her escape out of Persia, which was only for his love that regarded her not, and how he desired revenge, his mind being apt to entertain any complot. Cisor then said: Confer with the Kings Sons, and discover to them with what earnestness she hath sought his love; and receiving scorn for her affection, and disdain for her good will, hath in a desperate sort (ashamed to be rejected) stolen from the Court of the Emperor of Persia, either to destroy her self, or wilfully to live in perpetual exile: when they hear this, their hearts will easily be won to revenge her wrong; which done, let them alone to meditate thereon. Cisor having thus whetted him on, left him: which so prevailed, that he put the same in practise with the Kings Sons, that they began mortally to hate Montelion; agreeing to Arm themselves in such Armor that none but Cisor should know them, and for some days to lodge in the Pavilion, and there to devise which way to work him some disgrace. Upon this conclusion they parted, and provided Armor for that purpose.

CHAP. XXXV.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* arrived at the pavilion disguised to satisfie *Praxentia*: how he was discovered by *Palian*: how he and the King of *Macedon*'s Sons would have murthered him; how he slew one of them, and was accused by the Princess of a Rape, which broke the concluded peace.

When the time was come, Philotheta not failing, met the Knight of the Oracle to do her Message. How now Palmer (said he?) doth thou bring me news that Praxentia hath given over her love? if thou hast, tell me; if not, I pray thee trouble me not. My Lord, (quoth she) she rageth most extreamly, and I fear will do her self some violence, unless you pity her. I cannot do that (said he) though it pincheth me to hear of her sorrow, what can I say more? or what wouldest thou wish me to

do

do to ease her, and yet reserve my loyalty? Sir, (replied she) you may consider that she is honourable, vertuous, and Daughter to a King, worthy to be beloved; and it may be the Lady whom you love is not comparable to her in any of these gifts: No, nor in love, which may peradventure love another; and then you will wrong your self, and injure her. Peace Palmer (quoth he) if my fortune prove so bad, the greater will be my misery; tell me therefore, what thou wouldest have me do. My Lord (said she) had I not promised her to bring you to speak with her, she would have destroyed her self e're this; therefore vouchsafe me such favor that I may perform my word, which may be a means end her malady. Didst thou know (quoth he) how unwilling I am to do it, I think thou wouldst not request it: but to satisfie her of that which peradventure she will not credit by thy report, and at thy request, I will come to her this evening. Psalotheta being parted from him, by the way uttered these speeches: O that fortune would favor me so much, and bless me with that felicity to be the party this worthy Knight loveth so constantly! By this time she was come to the Pavilion, where even there entred four Knights in black armor gallantly mounted by their outward habit pretending some cruel Tragedy: these Knights were Palian and the King of Macedon's three Sons, who had vowed either secretly or openly to complot the death of Montelion, taking up their Lodgings to hatch their Treason.

The day being past, The Knight of the Oracle apparelled himself in the habit of one of the Kings servants, and only girding his sword to his side, he went to the Pavilion, concealing himself so closely as he could: But the Heavens had ordained him to endure some misery, for Palian espied his coming thither. Being entred the Pavilion, Psalotheta met him who with carefulness expected his coming, conducting him unto the place where Praxinia was; which went so sore against her heart to do, that with very grief she was ready to die; whether Palians treacherous eyes watched him. The Princess espying him, blushed exceedingly her own heart accusing her of immodesty, to reveal that which she would have concealed. He saluting her, uttered these speeches:

Most Noble Princess to fulfil your desire, and shew my grati-

tude to you for your friendſhip beſtowed on him that is not wor-thy thereof; I am come to you, deſiring you not to miſconceive me, nor condemn me of inhumanity, that am not my own, and therefore cannot give my ſelf to you. I have uttered to the Pal-mer that which I will now conceal, becauſe I will not offend you deſiring you to command my life, if you pleaſe, for that ſhall be at your diſpoſition, otherwiſe I cannot employ my ſelf to your liking. I have long ſince known of your good will to me, which Palan by his ſubtilty encreaſed, of whoſe lobe and proceedings I know ſo much, that to fulfil your requeſt, I ſhould wrong him. I was the man that ſhould have joyned your hands, when he took my name and habit upon him: which I preſume here to utter, that you may remember my innocency in that complot, and how conſtantly I have vowed my ſelf to another.

Praxentia with anger, ſhame and grief, ſtood like one mute, vexed that he knew of Palan's act; aſhamed to make lobe contrary to the property of her kind, & grieved to be diſappointed; all which together, ſuffered her not to ſpeak, till at laſt her paſſions and burning luſt ſo overcame her, that kneeling down, ſhe ſaid: Good Knight blame me not, nor condemn me of immodeſty, but grant pity to my torment. He taking her up, deſired her not to kneel to him that was not worthy thereof, nor able to deſerve it. She taking him by the hand, deſired him to ſit down by her upon the bed, making ſigns for Philotheta to depart the Room.

To repeat what manner of behaviour this woman uſed, and the words ſhe ſpake, would make my modeſt ear bluſh: but ſeeing that nothing could prevail, Rage and Luſt ſo overcame her, that in bitter exclaims ſhe cried out, Inhumane, Diſloyal, and Baſe Knight, doſt thou requite my lobe with this diſdain? or thinkeſt thou that I will live to bear the blot of thy refuſal? At the concluſion of which words, Thetus entred the Room, and with his Sword drawn ran at him, who by good fortune ſeeing him, ſtarted aſide, otherwiſe he had been ſlain, yet he was ſore wounded; whereupon drawing his Sword he ſtruck at Thetus, at every blow wounding him. Philotheta hearing the noiſe, came in, and ſeeing Montelion wounded, with fear, grief and amazement cried out aloud, Help, Help, the Kings Son will be murthered. The echo of her ſhrill voice ſounded throughout the whole Pavilion,

and

and both the ſervants and other Knights came running thither: and before they came he had gotten Thetus and overthrown him, and thruſt his Sword into his body. By this time Palian and her other two brethren came in, who ſeing Thetus ſlain, cried out, Stay the Traytor, he hath murthered Thetus, Son to the King of Macedonia. Praxentia hearing that, tore her hair, rent her garments and ſo disfigured her face, as was lamentable to behold. Some began to lay hands on The Knight of the Oracle; but his Fathers ſervants knowing him, ſtood in his defence: then there began a hot Combat on both parts, and many were ſlain. Praxentia being now diſcovered, was known to Palian, and her two brethren, to whom ſhe cryed, revenge my ſhame and my brothers death on this wicked Knight, who ſeketh by violence to diſhonour me, and hath ſlain my Brother.

What grief this was to Philotheta you may judge; and how it vexed him to be thus betrayed, cannot be uttered; ſtanding in his own defence againſt ſuch as would have apprehended him, that did not know him, till he was grievouſly wounded and many of them ſlain. By this time, the news thereof came to Perſicles, the Emperor of Perſia, and the King of Macedonia, who came thither with all ſpeed; and the Aſſyrians hearing of The Knight of the Oracle's diſtreſs, broke the Conditions of the concluded peace, and by multitudes ran forth of the City to preſerve him.

Perſicles firſt entred the Tent, next him the Emperor, then the King of Macedonia commanding upon pain of death, that no man ſhould ſtrike a blow, yet notwithſtanding, raſhneſs and heady force ſo overcame them, that it was long before they were appeaſed; the Emperor ſeing Praxentia there in ſuch ſort disfigured, asked if any could tell the cauſe of that miſchief. Firſt Praxentia ſpake, being moſt guilty, yet thought to excuſe her ſelf: Noble Emperor, my brother you ſee is ſlain in reſcuing me from that Knights violence. The Knight of the Oracle kneeling down before the Emperor, ſaid my noble Grandfather, I ſlew him in my own defence: neither did I know what he was, being my ſelf trained hither to my death. More he would have ſaid but the Souldiers having entred the Pavilion, reſted not till they had gotten to him, and he to ſatisfie them and avoid further miſchief, departed with them to the City: then did the Emperor and Perſicles,

ſicles comfort the King of Macedon: but he being vexed with his Sons death, and his Daughters diſgrace, and urged by his other two Sons, that ſtood by, he ſaid: Emperor of Perſia, I am much wronged and abuſed by thee and thy Progeny, by whoſe falſhood I ſee my Children lie dead before my face; how ſhould I then be contented? I ſwear by Heaven and Earth I will ſeverely revenge this Villany.

King of Macedon (ſaid Periſicles) I defie thee for accuſing me or mine of any diſhonor; and thou ſhalt ſee and find, this accuſation is falſe; why elſe are thy Sons here diſguiſed with my enemy? by whoſe plot this miſchief was intended againſt my Son, though it lighted upon themſelves.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the grief *Philotheta* endured for this misfortune: how ſhe was taken and carried to the *Armenian* Hoſt: of *Ralca* misfortune, and the Meſſage ſhe delivered to *Montelion*.

PHilotheta ſeeing how unfortunately all things fell out, withdrew her ſelf out of ſight, and in bitter exclaims lamented her hard fortune, but moſt of all, that ſhe was the cauſe of Montelion's coming thither, which had ſo near endangered his life: therefore ſhe ſhrowded her ſelf till it was night, which being come, ſhe travelled further into the Country, and ſelling a Jewel, ſhe altered her old habit into her right form. She ſtaid ſome days in a Village not far from the City of Piſos, in the houſe of an ancient Lady named Ralca, to whom ſhe related her misfortunes procured by Amphiador, but concealed her love to Montelion, fearing to commit that to her ſecreſie. Ralca being a woman of great wiſdom, uſed Philotheta very kindly; promiſing in words, and her deeds ſhewing it, that if ſhe ſhould ſtay with her, ſhe would as dearly tender her, as her own Daughter, whom ſhe cauſed to keep her company. Rejoycing much at this good Fortune, being alone, uttered theſe ſpeeches:

Praxentia, thee only may I accuſe for this miſery; for whom I undertook a task which my heart even then abhorred, and

and now repent, not so much intending to procure that that thou desirest, as to satisfie my own disquiet senses: by the same means baving drawn the Loyal Knight into danger of his life, whose blood thou dost seek to spill, else wouldst thou not so dishonorably and falsely have accused him. The consideration of which stratagems drew such a flood of tears from her eyes, that she could not stop their passage; which Ralca espying, demanded the cause thereof; but seeing Philotheta made no reply, she said, Philotheta, I pity your estate, and would gladly know the cause, that I might endeavour to comfort you. Philotheta trusting to her vertue, disclosed to her the love she bare to Montelion, and all that passed betwixt her and Praxentia, as is before rehearsed. Ralca thereby noting her beauty, commended the same; promising her, that if with patience she would quiet her self some few days, she would use all means possible for to comfort her.

Montelion having recovered his wounds, gathered together a mighty Host, and brought them to the City of Pisos, where were assembled the choice Souldiers Noblemen, Kts. and Gentlemen of Persia to fight in their Emperors behalf, who intrenched themselves without the City. The Kings of Macedonia & Armenia likewise had gathered together so mighty an Army as might have been thought able to make a conquest of the world, who pitcht their Tents about the City in Armenia, where their Kings lay. Montelion's heart was fired with desire to bride back those Foes, not staying to give them leave to make the first challenge: But humbling himself upon his knee before the Emperor & his Father uttered these speeches: Most mighty Emperor, & my noble father, I have already I hope satisfied you of my innocency, being trained thither to my intended death, by Praxentia and her brethren: but for that my honor is blemished by that infamous accusation, the common people rest unsatisfied, and my wrongs unrevenged. I humbly crave your license that I may send defiance to my false accusers, and by challenge acquit my self: which I am constrained thus hastily to desire, for that my heart will abide extream torments until it be finisht. The Emperor rejoycing at his forwardness, and seeing Persicles willing to have it so, gave his consent. Which done Montelion left them, and arming himself in white Armor which he had caused to be made of purpose, that no man

should

should know him, rode into the field between both Camps, and by a Herald sent this defiance into the Armenian's Camp: King of *Armenia*, there is a Knight whom you may behold in the field, that hath sent defiance to all the Knights in this Army, especially to thy Son, whom he accuseth to be a dishonourable Knight, and not worthy the name of a Prince, that he treacherously betrayed *Montelion*'s life; and he offers by Combat to prove against all Knights, that *Montelion* is a Knight both honourable and vertuous, and that *Praxenia*'s accusation is untrue: The Message was no sooner delibered, but thousands of Knights made suit to Combat him: But Palian to whom it principally belonged to defend his own honor, desiring his Fathers consent, and obtained it; and arming himself being gallantly mounted, rode into the field to him.

Montelion being desirous of revenge, and his heart inwardly tormented with grief, met Palian with a furious encounter, he answering him with the like, breaking their Launces with great comliness; then drawing their Swords, they began the Combat, which was soon ended, for within few blows Montelions Sword broke, so that he was constrained to close with Palian, wringing his sword from him with such force, that the pumel thereof struck him so violent a blow on the head, that he quised it, and overthrew him, every one thinking he had been dead: which done, Menius, eldest Son to the King of Macedonia, being ready armed, greeted Montelion with these words: Knight, thou hast undertaken a tedious task to Combat all the Knights in this Camp; yet I hope thou shalt never do that, for my self will abate thy courage. If there were as many more (quoth Montelion) I fear not all: if thou comest to combat with me, hold thy tongue, and desir thy hands, for I will have about with thee. With that they gave each other many cruel blows, and received some wounds, till Montelion again over-charging his sword with his unmeasurable strength, broke the same; which so vexed him, that he rushed upon Menius to have closed, but he knowing his intent, abided him; and before he could turn about, gave him so violent a blow, that it pierced his armor. Montelion having the hilt of his broken sword still in his hand flung the same with such violence, that lighting on Menius's horse head, struck him down, he having

much

much ado to get from him without harm. Whilſt Menſus was mounting himſelf on a freſh Steed Montelion's Eſquire brought him the ſword which was given by the Heſperian Nymphs, which when he graſped, he ſaid, Had I armed my ſelf with thee, my Foes had felt ſome ſmart, and my ſelfleſs diſgrace. Meeting again with ſuch fury, that they mangled their Armor, and the blood guſhed forth in many places: but the Knight of the Oracle charged his adverſary ſo ful, that in ſhort ſpace he got advantage, wounding Menſus ſo ſore, that had he not been reſcued he had either dyed or been forced to yeild: ſo that Montelion returned with victory, to the great joy of the Aſſyrians, but eſpecially to the Emperor and his Father.

Ralca that day left her houſe according to her promiſe to Philotheta, to try whether Montelion did affect her or no, coming to the Court at ſuch time as Montelion was newly arrived, and had his few wounds dreſt, a Meſſenger gave him knowledge of her coming. Being come to him, and all avoided the chamber, ſhe ſaid: Noble Prince I am come to tell you, that not many days ſince, there happened to come a Lady to my houſe in the diſguiſe of a Palmer, deſiring that I would for certain days entertain her till the wars were ended, for that ſhe had a meſſage to deliver unto you, from a Lady in Arabia, named Philotheta, which ſhe thought good to conceal a time, till you had better leiſure to hear it, and to perform that ſhe requeſted: Notwithſtanding, becauſe I honour you above all men, and would ſhew my duty to you in any reſpect, I have adventured to give you notice thereof without her knowledge.

The Knight of the Oracle was ſo raviſhed with joy to hear Philotheta named, much more that ſhe ſhould ſend to ſee him, and moſt of all what the Meſſage ſhould be, and how ſhe could tell where he was, or how ſhe ſhould remember him who had never but once ſeen him, that he ſate in a deep and ſilent Meditation, but before he could make anſwer, a ſervant of Ralcas came into the room in great haſte, uttering theſe ſpeeches: Madam, ſince you departed, much ſorrow hath befallen us; for certain Companies of the Armenian Hoſte having ranſacked your houſe, ſtoln your Cattel, carryed away the Lady, and conſumed all your Goods with fire. Ralca with grief then ſaid: My noble Lord:

(said she) that Lady is the most beautiful Philotheta, that hath long honored with a constant love, it was she that in the disguise of a Palmer came as a Messenger to you from Praxentia, who was guilty of that intended practice, her modesty withholding her to utter what she was, and undertaking that for Praxentia to make tryal of your vertue, and which way your affections were bent: Redeem her my Lord if it be possible, for she is the most vertuous Lady living. These words ended, she dyed which were sufficient to set Montelion's heart on fire, being ready to arm himself, but Raleaes servant seeing it, told him it was too late to pursue them, for by that time they were in the Host.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How the King of *Armenia* sent *Philotheta's* picture to *Dalfurno* Emperor of *Almaign*, who promised to aid him against his Foes: of the divers Combats he maintained in her beauty.

PHilotheta being now in the Armenian Host, by reason of her exceeding beauty, was presently carried to the Tent of the King a Macedon, who no sooner saw her, but he presently thought her of gift fit for the greatest Potentate in the World, and withall, fearing his Forces were too weak for the puissant Camp of their Foes, consulted with the King of Armenia about it, and at last concluded to send Ambassadors into Almaign to Dalfurno, who even then, newly succeeded his Father in the Empire, being a Prince of great valor, which was committed to two Noble men, the one of Armenia the other of Macedonia the contents whereof was to entreat his aid, withal to proffer him that Lady, whose Picture they had with them, being drawn by an exceeding cunning workman. The Ambassadors departed, and being arrived were to be admitted the Emperors presence; and humbling themselves, one of them delivered the Message in these words:

Renowned Emperor, the Kings of *Armenia* and *Macedonia*, send friendly greeting to your Highness: desiring your aid against the King of *Assyria*, and the Emperor of *Persia*, who are joyned together with oppression and unjust War to offer them injury, the Son of of *Persicles* having

having in a moſt diſhonorable ſort deflowred *Praxentia*, and ſlain *Theius* her brother in her reſcue: and our Lords having nothing of more worth than a moſt beautiful and vertuous Lady, who exceeds all the Ladies that ever eye beheld, doth preſent her to you, whoſe counterfeit imperfectly drawn, we here preſent to your Highneſs, deſiring your aſſiſtance to the aid of vertue, and ſuppreſſing of wrong, which agrees with your Magnanimity.

Deſiro no bearing theſe ſpeeches, and viewing the picture well, for a while ſtood mute; at laſt he made them this anſwer: I know not upon what ground I ſhould war againſt Aſſyria, and Perſia, that never did me wrong; yet I would willingly aſſiſt your Lords, not drawn thereto by this preſent, that I eſteem not, but the Love I bear them, and to puniſh ſuch diſhonor as their Foe hath done; therefore return your Lords this anſwer: that within three months I will be in Armenia, and bring with me ſuch a power as ſhall banquiſh their enemies, and put them in peaceable poſſeſſion of their Rights. After the Ambaſſadors were honorably entertained, and ſumptuouſly feaſted, they departed with this joyful news, which added both comfort and reſolution to the Armenian Hoſt.

The Emperor being alone, commanded the Picture to be brought into his Chamber, which he viewed and re-viewed, beholding the ſame with ſuch a forfeiting eye, that he began to affect the abſent Lady, by beholding her preſent picture; and calling before him the Antienteſt Captains and Commanders that were imployed in his Fathers Wars, he commanded them to muſter up an Army of forty thouſand ſtrong, of the beſt Souldiers in his Empire, and with all ſpeed to conduct them into Armenia, neither ſtaying his coming, nor expecting other command from him, for he would be there before them. This done, he cauſed a moſt coſtly Armor to be wrought of exceeding ſtrength, wherewith he armed himſelf, cauſing his Eſquire that attended him, to cover the Picture with a Rich Veil. He departed unknown of any, with this intent, by Combat to make all he met confeſs, that his Ladies beauty ſurpaſſed all others, until he came into Armenia where he determined to challenge all Knights whatſoever in her behalf: where being unknown, and carrying the picture covered he arrived, ſending his Eſquire

with this Message to the General: Noble General, my Master being a Knight of a strange Country, having travelled many miles in search of Adventures, hapning to arrive near the Host, being neither friend nor foe to this Country, desireth that with your favour he may make tryal of his valor against the Knights of this Camp, which he will undertake in defence of his Ladies beauty, vertue and worthiness, whom he will maintain against all comers, to exceed all others. The Messenger received this answer: tell thy Master he is welcome and shall have our free consent to what he requires; but let him take this friendly warning from me, that he beware what he undertake, lest the valor of these Knights turn him to repentance.

The Esquire having this answer, returned to his Master, who presently hung the Picture upon the body of a fair spreading Oke, himself standing thereby as Guardian, and ready to Combate him that came next.

The Knights of Armenia and Macedonia hearing of this strange Knights brave challenge, prepared to Just with him: the first was a young Knight of Armenia, name Tellurus, who loved Brissa daughter to the Duke of Linsus, but at the second encounter was overthrown: the next that Justed was Arnon of Macedonia, who maintained three courses against him with great agility, but at the fourth he was unhorsed. Divers others Justed against him, but he won the prize from them all.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* leaving his Parents in disguise, was entertained by the King of *Armenia*.

MOntelion having heard of the Damosels carrying away from Raleaes house by the enemy, little thinking it had been Philotheta, studied how to redeem her: first, he thought to attempt it by force of war, but that course seemed too tedious; then he bethought himself of some speedier means, for that long delay would pinch his heart. When he had long studied, and could yet resolve on nothing, he mounted his Horse, and in an Armor unknown

unknown, girding the good sword he loved so well to his side, he rode forth at a Postern Gate so secretly as he could, not as yet resolved what to do; riding toward the Armenian host, but a contrary way, as if he had not come from the Assyrian Camp. Being come to the watch, they apprehended him, and he yielded, desiring to be carried to their General; where being come, the General demanded of whence he was. I am (quoth he) of Arabia, having travelled many years in strange adventures. What is your name, (said the General) Sir (quoth he) my name is Honorius. Will you (said the General) serve me against my foe the Assyrian; I will (said he) if your quarrel be just, serve you faithfully, and spend my life to punish disloyalty. Then the General repeated the History between him and Pericles, shewing the claim he had to the Assyrian Crown, and amongst many other falsehoods accusing Montelion of Praxentiaes Rape, and Thetis's death. This vexed Montelion exceedingly, hoping to work sufficient revenge for all; using such behaviour and speech as was fit at such a time; so that he was well entertained of the General, and granted such privileges as the rest of the Knights had, being neither known, nor once suspected to be the man he was.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Delfurno* arrived at the *Armenian* Host.

The next day the Almaign Forces arrived in Armenia, and the King assuring himself that Delfurno would not be long behind them, caused Philotheta to be adorned with most costly, and rich robes, to be well attended by a gallant train of fair Damosels, which he did to please and delight him with her beauty. Philotheta supposed his intent in doing her so much honor, had been that either he pretended love to her himself, or else did it in the behalf of Polian, which besides the abundant cares that possest her heart, bred a fresh disquiet in her, resolving not to love any but Montelion. The same day also Delfurno seeing no more would combat with him came to the Court, discovering himself to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, yet he desired them to conceal the same, who with great honor and courtesie entertained him,

and

and the more to please him, conducted him to the Palace, where the two Queens of Macedonia and Armenia were, accompanied by the Princess Praxentia, but all in mourning except Philotheta, who dazzled the beholders eyes. When Dellurno beheld her, at the first view his heart was attained with lasting admiration, even then bowing his heart her thrall, suddenly becoming so servile a subject to love, that his Heart, Hands, Eyes, and every Member were devoted to her service. After short salutations to all the rest, forgetting longer to conceal himself, he came to Philotheta, saluting her with these speeches: Lady blame me not for undertaking to be the Champion of your beauty: I am the man that hath these many days held Combate against all Knights in your behalf, not having discovered to any your name, fearing to offend you the original of my attempt, being the earnest zeal and love I bear you. Sir, (replyed she) your labour was greater than your reward and more than you needed to have undertaken, and it little pleaseth me; therefore I pray leave off to do so, and then I shall think my self more beholding to you, the subject not answering the expectation.

Dellurno was nipt with this reply, but so much ravished to hear her Heavenly voice, that he was to seek of a reply, standing so long in a deep study, that she returned from him, and he started as ashamed of that over-sight, and coming to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, he said: This Ladies beauty surpasseth all that ever I beheld; I pray tell me of whence she is? Her name is Philotheta (quoth they) the daughter to a Duke in Arabia, whom if it pleaseth your Highness to accept of, she I know will yield to any request. I like her well indeed, quoth Dellurno, and do me that favour I may enjoy her, and I will bind my self your everlasting friend. Many other speeches past betwixt them, both of them promising to effect his desire with speed, especially the King of Armenia, who presently left him, and finding her out, he uttered these speeches: Fair Lady, such happiness may befall you at this instant, which if you now refuse, and like many thousand years after, you will never light on the like again; for the mightiest Emperor in the world seeketh your love, with honourable resolution to make you his Wife, and Crown you with the Title of Empress, this Knight that even now offered his ser-

vice

vice to you, is the Emperor of Almaign, named Dellumo, who hearing of your beauty, came purposely into this Country to behold you, and do you service.

Philothera hearing so old a man become so earnest a solicitor, being neither pleased with his company nor counsel, gave him this answer: Your proffers are as great as liberal, yet neither pleasing nor acceptable to me; for I live here by constraint, not by consent, whereby my mind cannot be at quiet till I am released from hence, desiring to live in another place.

CHAP. XL.

How the *Knight of the Oracle*, knew *Philothera*, and how she was by the King of *Armenia* committed to his charge.

ALl this while he stayed below amongst other Knights in the Hall till Philothera came to go into the Garden with a gallant train of Damosels attending on her, Montelion noting her well, suddenly remembring he had seen her, felt such a passion oppress his heart, that it seemed to melt within him: when she was past, he demanded what Lady that was? Her name said one, is Philothera, daughter to a Duke in Arabia, being lately surprized in Assyria, and brought hither with intent to be married to Dellumo. The Knight of the Oracle bearing this, shrowded himself in a solitary place, where he uttered these meditations: Can it be, that Philothera was in Assyria in her own person, and in another's name, to bring a message to me, that I need not doubt of, for Rileaes speeches, confirmed it: but may it not be, that she sent some other? that cannot be, for Rileo told me she came in the disguise of a Palmer, which Palmer was even the very same that trained me to Praxentiaes presence, whom I now remember had the very same countenance of Philothera, which made me to affect him so much. These remembrances may be assurances that she rather hateth then loveth me, otherwise I cannot be persuaded, and then the task I have undertaken will be over tedious, for it will be in vain to seek her love that regards me not: besides did she love me, yet having thrust my self amongst such a company of my ene-

mies,

mies, that if they knew me would soon end my life; it is impossible for me to make my love known to her, or so much as to speak to her. I see there is no hope for me, but to despair, or return to my Parents and seek to win her by force.

Continuing in these meditations he espyed the King of Armenia coming towards him, to whom he used great Reverence. The King suddenly seeing him, then remembred that he told him he was an Arabian, which made him say thus unto him: Well met Honorius, I think thou told me thou were of Arabia, and therefore it cometh in my mind, that thou art the only man mayest pleasure me, if thou wilt undertake for a matter of small labor but great importance: if thou wilt undertake it, and with secresie conceal it, thy reward shall be as much as thy heart can wish. My Lord, said he, whatsoeber it be I will undertake it, and do my utmost endeavour therein, with such secresie and diligence as you shall like of. I both trust and believe that, (said he) for in thy face I see the sparks of honor; therefore thus it is: there is in my Court a Lady of thy Country, named Philotheta, whom I thought to have matched to Dalurno, but now my mind is changed, and I purpose to enjoy her my self: and because thou art her Country man I think thou mayest prevail with her more than any other, therefore I have chosen thee as my friend, yea, my dear friend, to solicite my suit to her, but it must not be known but that thou speakest for the Emperor, for so I will tell him: this is that I would have thee perform: Tell me, art thou resolved to do it? were the task (said he) far greater, I would undertake it, but in this, I think my self much honoured by your Majesty, hoping to prevail so, that you shall attain your desire. Then come along with me, (quoth he) and so bringing him to her Lodging, he uttered these speeches:

Lady, because you are a stranger, and unacquainted with the Armenian guise, I have brought you this Knight, not to be your Guardian, (for I make you no prisoner) but to bear you company and defend you if any should offer you wrong, whom I hope you will accept of. Philotheta liked his proffer well hoping that he would prove a means for her escape, and accepted the same with hearty thanks.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the first conference between *Philotheta* and the *Knight of the Oracle*

When the Knight of the Oracle had the Lady in custody that he lobed so dearly, he thought himself most happy, and doing her humble reverence, she demanded his name? My name quoth he, is Honorius. Then she asked him whose Son he was, for which he had no ready answer, but stood silent, not caring to be taken in a lye. She seing that, said: I perceive I shall have small comfort of thee, for I see thou art not of my Country.

Lady (said he) what ever I am, I rest only at your command, Then (quoth she) you will not please him that brought you unto me, for my mind and his are quite contrary. Suppose I did, (qd. he) yet having no intent to do it, but thereby to enjoy your presence, you have no cause to suspect me: yet you are deceived in his intent for none but my self knoweth it, which I will reveal to you, if you will conceal it from him, for I came hither to do you service, and not to further him. Tell it me, (said she) and indeed I will conceal it. Thus it is, (replyed he) whereas he with great earnestness hath sued in the behalf of the Emperor, he hath now appointed me to be a more earnest solicitor in his own behalf, for that he is deeply in lobe with you, but he intendeth that Dalsurno shall think I am only employed to pleasure him, which he imparting to me, I willingly undertook, not to do it, but to do you all the humble service and duty that lies in a man to do, being neither of this Court, nor of Arabia, but a Knight of Assyria, that vowed never to leave searching till I found you out, the occasion whereof was this:

It chanced one day to be my fortune, that as I was walking in a Grove adjacent unto the Palace Garden, I heard a Knight whom afterwards I well knew, making such lamentation for your absence, that nothing but news of your safety could ease his heart: whereupon I discloſed my self unto him, and for the lobe I bare him, vowed to travel in your search: first arriving in

this Court, where to my exceeding joy I have found you, with all humility proffering you my service, being ready to undertake any peril to do you service.

I know not how to trust thee (said she) considering that thou regardest not to break thy word with the King of Armenia, therefore I fear thou wilt do the like to me; yet if fair words deceive me, I shall be deceived in time: I would trust thee, but I dare not, and blame me not; for having found untruth in many, I know not how to trust thee: my Fortune was ever yet adverse, and therefore I am without hope of better, then leave me for this time, and if you can find in your heart to be true to help me, I may hereafter be better advised to employ you. These words being ended, they departed.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the sorrow that was made in the *Assyrian* Camp for the *Knight of the Oracle's* absence.

LEt us now return to speak of Persicles, who missing his Son went to seek him at his Chamber, and from thence from place to place, till at last he heard news by a servant, there was a Knight departed that day at the Postern Gate, armed at every point. Persicles hearing that, returned to the Emperor, and certified him and Constantia of his departure, both of them being striken with exceeding grief. News likewise was brought, the Emperor of Almaign was arrived with forty thousand souldiers, to aid the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia.

The Emperor of Persia and Persicles hearing this, assembled all the Nobility together to determine what to do: at last they all concluded with a general consent, within two days to bid them Battel; but the Souldiers hearing of the Knight of the Oracle's absence, seemed like men that had lost their former courage.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the ſecret practices of the Kings of *Macedonia* and *Armenia* to deceive each other of *Philotheta's* love, which they revealed to *Honorius*, *Knight of the Oracle.*

MOntelion being alſo no leſs ſad, to have left his Parents ſo carelesly, than they were for his abſence, ſpending the night in ſolitary meditations, he aroſe early on purpoſe to reveal himſelf and his love to Philotheta, whatſoever enſued thereon, yet fearing to diſquiet her, he walked down the Garden, where he had not ſtaied long, but he was ſaluted by Delfurno, who came purpoſely to know if he had mentioned his ſuit to Philotheta, who anſwered him, that he had much conference with her laſt night about it, and that ſhe had deferred him for that days anſwer. Thereupon he promiſed him a great reward for his fidelity, and ſo departed.

He was no ſooner gone, but the King of Macedon came to him, whoſe heart was grounded upon a new ſubject, which Montelion thought not of, for he determined that none ſhould enjoy Philotheta but himſelf, and therefore came to make trial, whether his ſuppoſed Honorius would condeſcend to be ruled by him, which if he would do, he ſhould ſecretly convey Philotheta into Macedonia: to this effect he communed with Honorius, firſt binding him to be ſecret, and then by gifts enticing him; and laſtly, uſing intreaty till he had uttered the depth of his mind, which he promiſing to effect, uſing ſuch words as pleaſed the King, wherewith he went away.

Whilſt Montelion and the King of Macedonia were thus in conference, the King of Armenia entred the Garden, but ſeeing them in diſcourſe together, withdrew himſelf till he departed, and then came in, demanding what good news he had for him.

My Lord (quoth he) the laſt motion you made to her about her marriage to Delfurno hath hindred your own, for I had much ado to perſwade her, that you had any intent to love her, that was ſo earneſt for another: yet nevertheleſs I hope ſoon to alter her, and bring her to a better liking of your affection. The Emperor

hath been with me already, earnestly soliciting me to prosecute his suit with efficacie. Likewise the King of Macedonia hath with many promises desired me to use what perswasions I could in the Empresses behalf: But being so honorably esteemed of by your Majesty, I will try the uttermost of my skill to pleasure you. I thank thee (good Honorius, quoth he) and I will for thy kindness, yield thee as large a recompence, as thine heart can wish; which said, he departed.

What an office have I undertaken (said Montelion) to sue for others, and dare not speak for my self: and yet contrary to my liking am forced to it, only to rid my self from grief. Yet because time affordeth me not opportunity to work my own ends, I'le try whether she will pity me or not.

CHAP. XLIV.

How *The Knight of the Oracle* discovered himself to *Philothea*, and how by a stratagem he conveyed her thence in safety, and what rejoycing there was thereupon.

NOw The Knight of the Oracle having parted from the King of Armenia, went to Philotheaes lodging, whom he found very sad, but espying him come towards her, turned from him refusing to hear him speak, (supposing his speaches would have tended to perswade her to what he had the day before mentioned:) He seeing her unwillingness to hear him, imagined the cause, but yet emboldening himself he said: Vertuous Lady pardon my boldness, and withall vouchsafe to hear me who shall not offend you; for I have vowed not to utter a syllable contrary to your liking.

You will then (quoth she) prove perjured, I know your message well enough before you utter it, and that will displease me. No dear Lady (said he) I come not now to ask pity for another, but for my self, that sometimes have been better known of you: I am the most unfortunate Montelion, that hath adventured thus far amongst my Foes to fetch you out, my heart having honored you ever since the first sight of you in the Hermits Cell in Arabia, and now I desire you to pity me, for without your favor I am not my self, and in your favor I shall account my self most fortunate,

tunate. Philotheta noting him well, perfectly remembred that it was he, which revived her heart with great joy, saying: Noble Knight, I account my self most happy, in that you have me in custody, for your vertuous mind I know will shelter me from dishonor: should I not yield you thanks for deeming so well of me, that am not worthy, you might condemn me of rudeness, therefore I most humbly thank you, and withall desire you to pity my estate, that is now wracked upon the whirl of despair. Dear Lady (said he) I am willing to do you any service, desiring nothing more than to employ my self to your good, for my life is yours, and all that I have shall lie prostrate at your feet, desiring to convey you hence into Assyria, where your Parents live in safety, but sorrowful for your absence.

Sir, (replied she) your vertuous kindness hath deserved more at my hands than I can yield thanks for, then how should I behave my self to do the thing you desire, which is already fixed in my heart: I will rest so far to be directed by you as that my mind shall be agreeable to any request you shall make. Then dear Lady, (said he) I will before to morrow this time set you safe in my Fathers Court, for much mischief is intended by the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia; both of them have been with me this day, and hired me to motion their loves to you, both of them seeking to enjoy you, but as the other should not know thereof, each striving to prevent the other, and both of them the Emperor, which they have revealed unto me; but may I have your licence, I will deliver you from their custody. I most humbly desire you to do it (quoth she) referring my self to your good directions, and committing all to your wisdoms election: this said, the Knight of the Oracle imboldning himself, gave and received so sweet a kiss, which seemed to interchange each others Souls: he leaving her, to find out the King of Armenia, and she into her private Chamber.

Montelion having found out the King of Armenia told him how that the King of Macedon went to convey Philotheta from thence, relating all the conference that had passed between them; nay, said he the Emp. was with me this day, promising me great rewards if I would do the like for him. Now my Lord, my love and duty to you, bindeth me only to do you service, and therefore I

have

have vowed that my best endeavors shall be imployed only unto your good liking.

The King hearing how they went both about to deceive him, raged exceedingly, but trusting to his fidelity he was quieted, asking him what he should do to prevent them both. My Lord (quoth he) this evening you may effect your desire or never; at which time give me but directions whither I may convey her to a place of security, or where we may meet you, and I will adventure my life but I will do it; but you must deliver your signet unto me, for our quiet passage out of the City Gate, and then I will meet you where you will appoint us. That shall be, said the King) at Fryer Barnards Cell without the City if you know it, and there is my Signet. Thither will I convey her (quoth he) at twelve a clock. Farewel replyed the King, be faithful, and thou shalt find my friendship such, as shall highly reward thy pains.

Montelion having effected this, presently went to the King of Macedonia, telling him that the Emperors impertunity was such, that it was high time to convey Philothea from thence, whom he found willing to yield thereto: He hearing that, desired his counsel, promising to reward him well, telling him that if he would do it for him, both he and his Kingdom should be at his command. Then (quoth Montelion) deliver me your Signet for my pass, and appoint the time and place, and I will bring her thither. There is my Signet (quoth he) and bring her to Fryer Barnards Cell at one of the Clock.

Montelion then with all speed went to the Emperor, telling him that Philothea did greatly affect him, and had sent him to make an humble request unto him, which was, that she might be conveyed in secresie from the Armenian Camp, for that many dangers did inviron her in that place, and that of such importance as did concern his life, whereon her safety depended, which because they were of weight, she would reveal to none but himself, desiring him not to come to her, for it would endanger his person.

Delfurno fearing this, was much troubled in his mind, yet being very glad to hear that she so much esteemed him, said: Honorius, I would as willingly effect any thing to content her, as I would to save my own life, yet I do not know how, unless by

thy

thy directions, therefore do but counsel me, and I will yeild to that which thou shalt advise me. My Lord (said he) the safest way is this night to convey her secretly through the Gate where your Souldiers lye, and I will bring her to Fryer Barnards Cell about eleven clock, where you may be ready to receive her, and with a strong guard convey her into Almaigo, or any place of security: Moreover, my Lord, she willed me to assure you, that both the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia, having disloyally forgotten their promise to you, sued to win her love to themselves, which dishonor she cannot endure. Delforno was much grieved to hear that, yet hoping to prevent them both, quieted himself, delivering his Signet unto him, with many thanks and much entreaty, desiring him to be careful; and that nothing might prevent his purpose.

Montelion being glad of this, thought not to end yet, but presently went to the Queen of Macedonia, telling her the Kings plot, to convey Philotheta from thence, shewing her his Signet, which when she beheld, exceeding grief possest her heart, to think of his disloyalty. But seeing her sorrow, he said: Although he hath attempted this, I know the Ladies vertues to be such, as she will sooner suffer the extreamest miseries in the World, than yeild thereto; and for my self, though he hath promised me great rewards, I respect more my honor, than to be agent in so wicked an act: therefore to assure you that I intend it not; I yield you his Signet, whereby I should have passed the Camp, to meet at Barnards Cell. I thank thee gentle Knight (quoth she) and for this deed command any thing, and thou shalt have it; my self will meet him there, and by that means I hope to make him give over his attempt.

The Knight of the Oracle being gone from her, went to the Armenian Queen, telling her the like, and indeed the truth of her Lord, both giving her his Signet, and directions how she should meet him, leaving her so mad with rage and jealousie, that she was ready to tear her hair, yea, even with bitter exclaims to reveal her mind, but that she referred it until she might surprize him with a guilty conscience at the Cell.

By this time it grew to be night, and after supper was ended, Delforno, the King of Armenia, the King of Macedonia, making

more

more then wonted haste to bread company, each being glad that the other was so willing to part, which the two Queens noted, being privy to their drifts.

Then Montelion went to Philotheta, telling her that he had so prevailed with the Emperor, that he had gotten his Signet as their warrant to pass through the Camp, desiring her to be in a readiness to go with him, intreating her to fear no danger, for his life should sheild her: whereupon she desired him to stay with her till the time appointed, which he did, passing away the same in private conference.

The time being come, and all things silent, Montelion armed himself, leading Philotheta out of the Court, passing all the Guards, Watches and Garrisons, by shewing the Emperors Signet, and coming where the Souldiers lay, they likewise let him go: he having without danger effected this, turned his steps towards his own City where being come to the Gates, the watch demanded who they were: and he bade them come down and see: but upon examination discovering himself, he commanded them to carry him as prisoner to Dolatus, where being come, he unveiled Philotheta, and Alfala presently knew her, with tears of joy embraced her, whilst the old Duke melted with passion to behold his child, whom from her infancy he had not seen, embracing her in his arms.

These joyful expressions being over-past, the Knight of the Oracle said: Lady, since you are now in safety with your Parents, my promise is performed, desiring you to have regard to the passions I endure, which time will not now permit me to utter, but I leave it to your courteous consideration, therefore I beseech you in my absence let my Loyalty be regarded, and your gentle heart willing to pitty me: which said, with a second kiss, he left her, to submit himself to his Parents.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the discord that fell between the Emperor of *Almaign*, the King of *Macedonia*, and the King of *Armenia*, about *Philotheta's* departure: of a merry jest that befel the two Queens; and the desolation of the *Armenian* Host.

DElfurno the Emperor chusing to him some truty Knights that he meant should convey Philotheta to Almaign secretly, went to the Fryers Cell, where he secretly shrowded himself under a Tuft of Cypress-trees staying the coming of Philotheta, but it was an hour before any came, and the first was the Queen of Macedonia, who attended by one of her Gentlemen, came towards Bernards Cell; which he beholding, went to her, saying:

My dear Philotheta, I am sorry that for my sake you should take such pains at this unseasonable hour to be abroad, for which I yield you all the thanks a constant heart can with. She hearing that, thinking it had been her Lord, returned him the same; and purposing to try the utmost before she revealed her self, said: had I not been assured of your love, I would not have come hither; but being here, I rest at your disposition.

Delfurno then embraced her, oftentimes kissing her hand; and being of a quick conceit presently bethought himself, if he might condescend, to call up the Fryer and be married. Lady, said he) since you have vouchsafed to grand me love, yield me possession, and let us be married.

My Lord (replyed she) I am content. Then Delfurno called up Fryer Bernard, who arising, the Emperor took him aside, and told him what he was; who hearing that, presently joined their hands. Delfurno then purposed not to convey her thence, but returned to the Camp: as soon as he was gone, the King of Macedonia came to the Cell, and presently after, the Queen of Armenia according to Mountlion's directions.

The King taking her for Philotheta, at the first meeting embraced her with a sweet Conge, uttering many loving speeches,

which she answered as kindly, and he desired present possession of her love; but she denyed, telling him that his Queen would soon seek her death when she knew it.

Fear that not, (quoth he) for e're long I mean to make her sure enough for ever troubling of you; therefore deny me not, but grant me thy love.

I will not (said she) without some further assurance, for my mind presageth some ill. Here is a Fryer (quoth he) not far off, will you condescend that he shall marry us? She agreeing, he called up the Fryer the second time, who marvelling thereat, demanded the cause of his coming. My friend, (quoth he) I would be marryed to this Lady, therefore I pray thee do it with all speed.

The Fryer thinking that some mad spirits were abroad, or that some frantick dream had overcome his senses, without asking any more questions, married them and sent them away. The King of Macedon carried her to his Tent in the Field, for he durst not go to the Palace for fear of his Wife, where he stayed with her all night.

Now the King of Armenia all this while was studying what eloquent speeches he should use to set forth his love, resting himself upon a hand hard by the Cell, staying their coming an hour: but when three hours were come and past, he began to be impatient, fearing he should be disappointed: but when he saw they came not, he thought with himself that he had mistaken the time, and being much troubled in mind, knocked at the Fryers Cell who started from his bed as one affrighted, wondring what accident had driven so many thither that night; and coming to the door, the King of Armenia demanded if there had not been a Lady there that night.

Yes (qd. he) here hath been two, but what they were, I know not: I think one couple was Philotheta and Delfurno, that I married; but what the other two were I know not. He hearing that, in a mad rage went to the King of Macedon's Tent, desiring to speak with him; the Guard knowing him, let him in; and he coming to the Bed-side, said:

Brother of Macedon, the Lady that we intended to marry to Delfurno, is this night fled, so that we shall lose his friendship

for

ſo; eber. The King of Macedonia hearing him, lay like one bereft of ſenſe, not knowing what to ſay, and the Queen hearing her Husband there, whom ſhe thought lay by her, trembled with fear.

The King of Macedonia ſeing no remedy, but that his deed of neceſſity muſt be diſcobered, ſaid: King of Armenia, it is ſo: I habe Philotheta in my cuſtody, and her I will enjoy, ſo; ſhe lies folded in mine arms.

By Jupiter (quoth the King of Armenia) thy life ſhall not ſatisfie the diſhonour thou haſt done us: with that he drew his Swo;d, and the King of Macedon leaped out of the bed to reach his to defend himſelf: in which time the King of Armenia catching hold on her as ſhe lay, drew her fo;th upon the flo;, and beholding her well, he was ſo much enraged, that he was ready to kill her, but the King of Macedon prebented him, whom when he beheld, he ſtood like one metamo;phoſed, while ſhe haſted to apparel her ſelf, and ran from thence unto the Palace. The King of Armenia bowing rebenge, went from the Macedonian Tent, and cauſed his Drums to beat up Alarms, commanding his ſouldiers to deſtro; the Macedonians, who accoding to o;der ſuddenly ſet upon them, ſo that there began a great ſlaughter amongſt them.

The Empero; hearing this news, ſuppoſing the cauſe had been ſo; the loſs of Philotheta, commanding two of his Knights to go unto either of them, and deſire them to be pacified until they had diſcobered their griefs to him, which he could eaſily remedy. The Meſſengers went, and found them both together in ſingle combat, deliboring their Meſſage unto them; but it was long before any of them would go to him, yet at laſt they both went together: to whom the Empero; ſaid: My Lo;ds, I deſiede your ſtrife ariſeth from the loſs of Philotheta, if that be the cauſe, contend no mo;e: fo; as you were both willing I ſhould enjoy her, ſo I habe done this night.

The King of Armenia being enraged with jealouſie, drew the Curtains; and the Queen of Macedonia ſeing her Hono; ſo betraped, was quite bereft of her ſenſes: but coming to her ſelf again, ſhe cryed out fo; pardon; but they were all ſo enraged, that no time of parley was admitted, and as well Diturno as the

rest betwixt himself to Arms. But the Queen, humbling her self at her Husbands feet, said: Both you, my self, and all of us, are deceived: Honorius told me last night, that you intended to marry Philotheta, and I requested his counsel how to prevent you; whereupon he told me that you had appointed to meet him and her at Barnards Cell; and for his pass he had received your Signet, which at my entreaty he delivered unto me: I thinking to prevent you, went thither, where the Emperor met me, whom I took to be your self, and he took me to be the Lady Philotheta; I still concealing my self, thinking I had not offended, but now I see I am betrayed. Lady (said he) this fault I pardon having committed the same with the Queen of Armenia.

The Emperor hearing this, sent a Messenger to know if Philotheta was in the Court; but he brought news that neither she nor the strange Knight were to be found. The Emperor then said, that Knight had deceived us all, therefore let us be friends. Content, (quoth the King of Macedonia.) By Heaven (said the King of Armenia) I will not bear this dishonor, but be revenged at full, and make thee repent that ever thou offeredst such dishonor to Armenia. The King of Macedonia could not brook his words, but in a rage made this reply: I know thou art a Tyrant, and regardest no Laws Humane or Divine, as may be seen by the unjust Title thou layest to the Assyrian Crown, which is forged; and were it not to revenge my daughters shame and Sons death, I would not draw a Sword against that worthy King Pericles, therefore since thou art so peremptory, do thy worst, I regard thee not.

The King of Armenia went from thence, and fell upon the Macedonians; the King of Macedon presently left his Tent to defend himself, and the Emperor with all speed commanded his Souldiers to march out of the City.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Perficles* and the *Knight of the Oracle* ſuddenly iſſuing out, deſtroyed the *Armenian* Hoſt.

MOntelion knowing that ſome ſtratagem would follow his laſt nights policy, after he had ſubmitted himſelf to the Emperor and his Parents, he armed himſelf in the Armor that was given him by the Nymphs, and mounting himſelf conducted ſix thouſand ſouldiers into the City. Perficles hearing of this, ſent for him to know the cauſe. This night (qd. he) we ſhall ſurpize our enemies, who are now together by the ears amongſt themſelves. Whereupon Perficles armed himſelf, Deloratus, Peſor, Cothanes, and many other Knights of great eſtæm, marching thither, where they heard ſuch cruel Alarms, that they thought the City had been utterly deſtroyed: being come thither, they beheld the Emperor in the Field, to whom Perficles ſent a Herald, certifying, that he was never foe to the Almaigns, deſiring therefore to know if Delfurno came againſt him: but he returned anſwer that he was no foe to him.

Montelion being entred the City, ſet upon his enemies with ſuch fury, that many of them loſt their lives, and ſeing the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia together in ſingle combat, he ſtept between them, ſaying: Strive not to deſtroy one another, but defend your ſelves.

They knowing him, were ſo amaz'd, as if they had been in a ſudden trance, running ſeveral ways to call back their ſouldiers from deſtroying one another, to defend themſelves, but before they could array themſelves in order, the Aſſyrians were ſo intermingled amongſt them, that they were ſoon banquiſhed. Palian ſeing this, perceived it was in vain to ſtrive for victory, ſtole ſecretly forth of the City to the Emperor, entreating him not to leave them ſo, but Delfurno ſeing that diſadvantage had ſeized them, refuſed, letting him return without comfort, ready to yield to Montelion's ſword, at whom he ran with ſuch fury that he wounded him on the thigh. Montelion feling that, ſtruck ſo forcible a blow at Palian, that he aſtoniſhed him, and without ſtaying

took

took the King, at the first blow cutting asunder his wrist which had lost his Gantlet, and at the next, thrust his Sword quite thorow his body.

Palan having recovered himself, and looking about him, beheld his Fathers Tragedy, aiming his Swords point at Montelion's heart; which he perceiving, welcomed him with so cruel a blow, that his Armor flew in pieces; and Palians would have done the like, had not his Armor been of invincible strength: but in the end he flew from him to save his life, finding himself too weak and feeble.

Perficles and Deloratus all this while ranged up and down, destroying all they met, until they met the King of Macedonia and his two Sons, accompanied with four other Knights of the same Country, who had made much slaughter amongst their Souldiers.

Perficles ran his Lance full couched at the King of Macedon, and overthrew him; but his eldest Son stepping to his rescue, did wound him in the thigh: then began an unequal fight, those six set upon Perficles and Deloratus, who continued combat with them the space of an hour, till both sides were grievously wounded; especially them two, who were ready to faint with effusion of blood.

Montelion seeing his Father and Deloratus in such danger, was so enraged, that he ran at one of them with such force, that he slew him, and the next he bereft of sence, and charging another with such puissant blows, that he forced him to bid vale to the Field: another seeing that, encountred him, but at the first charge received so feral a blow, that he was not able to resist him. Perficles being sore wounded, yet behaved himself so haliantly, that one of them lay dead at his feet, and the rest fled from Montelion. Then began a desolation in the Host, the Armenians crying out, Flie, flie; and their Enemies, Kill, Kill: that on a sudden the Battel was so hot, that the City-channels ran with blood, and none could pass for dead bodies. Then began the Citizens to run in heaps, and the two Queens with Praxenia, betook themselves to flight, but were all taken by Pilor.

Palan was taken Prisoner by Deloratus, and the King of Macedon and his two Sons by Perficles and Montelion. The souldiers

diers that were fled out of the City, and did themselves in the fields, and so many Citizens as could escape the Sword, entreated Pericles on their knees to save their lives: who yeilded upon this condition, that they should pay to every common Souldier a hundred Crowns, and to every Leader five hundred, which they performed. Knight of the Oracle

Pericles then sounded a Retreat, and drew his Forces out of the City, appointed Garrisons for them. D. Marno at his return met him, and so they rode together to the City of Pisos, where they were received with great Honor and Joy; especially the Knight of the Oracle, to whom all men attributed the glory of that Victory.

After the dead bodies were buried, and maimed Souldiers sent to Hospitals to be cured, and every one well gratified, within two days the Emperors of Almayn and Persia, Pericles, Deloratus, Montelion, and all the Nobles there, except prisoners, assembled to finish the conclusion of this controversie, for that the King of Macedonia hasted his releasement. Being all set in a most Royal and Majestical sort, the places nèr to the Royal Assembly being gloriously furnished with the beauties of shining Ladies, the Prisoners were brought before them in honorable sort; and after many allegations of wrongs, they desired Montelion to appoint their Ransomes: whereupon with great wisdom and decent behaviour he yeilded them thanks, as was seldom seen in any Knight so young; first with great courtesie embracing the King of Macedon, reconciling him to his Queen, and the rest who had taken offence by him, setting all free but Palian and Praxentia; imposing this task upon them, Palian to marry Praxentia, and she to quit him of the wrongful accusation she laid upon him, which she presently did, but refused to marry Palian.

The two Emperors and Pericles desiring them to honor the Knight of the Oracle, stood up, requesting him to require any thing of them he desired; for above all men they esteemed him, as he had best deserved. Montelion desiring nothing more than Paliotheres love, crept to the seat where she sate like a Goddess enshining all the rest, and taking her by the hand, he said:

Fair Lady, will you condescend to what I demand, and I shall

took the King, at the first blow cutting asunder his wrist which had lost his Gantlet, and at the next, thrust his Sword quite thorow his body.

Palan having recovered himself, and looking about him, beheld his Fathers Tragedy, aiming his Swords point at Montelion's heart; which he perceiving, welcomed him with so cruel a blow, that his Armor flew in pieces; and Palians would have done the like, had not his Armor been of invincible strength: but in the end he flew from him to save his life, finding himself too weak and feeble.

Pericles and Deloratus all this while ranged up and down, destroying all they met, until they met the King of Macedonia and his two Sons, accompanied with four other Knights of the same Country, who had made much slaughter amongst their Souldiers.

Pericles ran his Lance full couched at the King of Macedon, and overthrew him; but his eldest Son stepping to his rescue, did wound him in the thigh: then began an unequal fight, those six set upon Pericles and Deloratus, who continued combat with them the space of an hour, till both sides were grievously wounded; especially them two, who were ready to faint with effusion of blood.

Montelion seeing his Father and Deloratus in such danger, was so enraged, that he ran at one of them with such force, that he slew him, and the next he bereft of sence, and charging another with such puissant blows, that he forced him to bid vale to the Field: another seeing that, encountred him, but at the first charge received so fatal a blow, that he was not able to resist him. Pericles being sore wounded, yet behaved himself so valiantly, that one of them lay dead at his feet, and the rest fled from Montelion. Then began a desolation in the Host, the Armenians crying out, Flie, flie; and their Enemies, Kill, Kill: that on a sudden the Battel was so hot, that the City-channels ran with blood, and none could pass for dead bodies. Then began the Citizens to run on heaps, and the two Queens with Praxenia, betook themselves to flight, but were all taken by Pisor.

Palan was taken Prisoner by Deloratus, and the King of Macedon and his two Sons by Pericles and Montelion. The souldiers

diers that were fled out of the City, and hid themselves in the fields, and so many Citizens as could escape the Sword, entreated Pericles on their knees to save their lives: who yielded upon this condition, that they should pay to every common Souldier a hundred Crowns, and to every Leader five hundred, which they performed. Knight of the Oracle

Pericles then sounded a Retreat, and drew his Forces out of the City, appointed Garrisons for them. Dalfurno at his return met him, and so they rode together to the City of Pisos, where they were received with great Honor and Joy; especially the Knight of the Oracle, to whom all men attributed the glory of that Victory.

After the dead bodies were buried, and maimed Souldiers sent to Hospitals to be cured, and every one well gratified, within two days the Emperors of Almaign and Persia, Pericles, Deloratus, Montelion, and all the Nobles there, except prisoners, assembled to finish the conclusion of this controversie, for that the King of Macedonia hasted his releasement. Being all set in a most Royal and Majestical sort, the places nèr to the Royal Assembly being gloriously furnished with the beauties of shining Ladies, the Prisoners were brought before them in honorable sort; and after many allegations of wrongs, they desired Montelion to appoint their Ransomes: whereupon with great wisdom and decent behaviour he yielded them thanks, as was seldom seen in any Knight so young; first with great courtesie embracing the King of Macedon, reconciling him to his Queen, and the rest who had taken offence by him, setting all free but Palian and Praxentia; imposing this task upon them, Palian to marry Praxentia, and she to quit him of the wrongful accusation she laid upon him, which she presently did, but refused to marry Palian.

The two Emperors and Pericles desiring them to honor the Knight of the Oracle, stood up, requesting him to require any thing of them he desired; for above all men they esteemed him, as he had well deserved. Montelion desiring nothing more than Psalotheres lobe, crept to the seat where she late like a Goddess enshining all the rest, and taking her by the hand, he said:

Fair Lady, will you condescend to what I demand, and I shall

shall obtain. Sir (said she) I yeild above all the rest to honour you, as one most unworthy, yet having received most. Then he leading her down with greater Royalty than ever Paris did Helen, desiring to be married to her; which was applauded with so general a content, that all persons rejoyced, some commending, some embracing; and every one desirous to shew their loves to him, so that the day of marriage was appointed, and likewise performed, with more Royalty, Joy, and pleasure, than can be expressed.

An Advertisement of Books

Printed for, and sold by F. Coles, T. Vere, *and* J. Wright.

THe *Dutch Fortune-Teller* in Folio.
The famous History of *Parismus* and *Parismenos*, in 4.
The History of *Ornatus* and *Artesia*, in 4.
The History of *Tom a Lincoln*, or the *Red Rose Knight*, in 4.
The pleasant History of *Dorastus* and *Fhenia*, in 4.
Hocus Pocus, or the art of *Legerdemain*, in 4.
The *Speedy Post*, or a *Packet of Letters*, in 4.
The *Seven Wise Masters of Rome*, in 8.
The *Seven Wise Mistresses of Rome*, in 8.
Robin Hoods Garland, in 8.
Wit and Mirth, by *J. Taylor*, in 8.
The *Garland of Goodwil*, in 8.
The *Garland of Loyalty*, in 8.
The *School of Vertue*, in 8.
With variety of other Histories, useful either for *England* or *Ireland*.

FINIS.

1687